# Nonlinear Dynamics and 

## Systems Theory

# An International Journal of Research and Surveys 

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF A.A.MARTYNYUK<br>S.P.Timoshenko Institute of Mechanics<br>National Academy of Sciences of Ukraine, Kiev, Ukraine

## REGIONAL EDITORS

P.BORNE, Lille, France

Europe
C.CORDUNEANU, Arlington, TX, USA
A.D.C.JESUS, Feira de Santana, Brazil USA, Central and South America

PENG SHI, Pontypridd, United Kingdom
China and South East Asia
K.L.TEO, Perth, Australia

Australia and New Zealand
JIANHONG WU, Toronto, Canada
North America and Canada

## Academic Periodical Press

# Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory 

An International Journal of Research and Surveys

## EDITOR-IN-CHIEF A.A.MARTYNYUK

The S.P.Timoshenko Institute of Mechanics, National Academy of Sciences of Ukraine, Nesterov Str. 3, 03680 MSP, Kiev-57, UKRAINE / e-mail: anmart@stability.kiev.ua

## HONORARY EDITORS

V.LAKSHMIKANTHAM, Melbourne, FL,USA

YU.A.MITROPOLSKY, Kiev, Ukraine
MANAGING EDITOR I.P.STAVROULAKIS
Department of Mathematics, University of Ioannina 45110 Ioannina, HELLAS (GREECE) / e-mail: ipstav@cc.uoi.gr

## REGIONAL EDITORS

P.BORNE (France), e-mail: Pierre.Borne@ec-lille.fr C.CORDUNEANU (USA), e-mail: concord@uta.edu A.D.C. De JESUS (Brazil), e-mail: acj@libra.uefs.br P.SHI (United Kingdom), e-mail: pshi@glam.ac.uk K.L.TEO (Australia), e-mail: K.L.Teo@curtin.edu.au J.WU (Canada), e-mail: Wujh@mathstat.yorku.ca

## EDITORIAL BOARD

Artstein, Z. (Israel)
Azbelev, N.V. (Russia)
Chen Han-Fu (China)
Cruz-Hernández, C. (México)
D'Anna, A. (Italy)
Dauphin-Tanguy, G. (France)
Dshalalow, J.H. (USA)
Eke, F.O. (USA)
Fabrizio, M. (Italy)
Freedman, H.I. (Canada)
Georgiou, G. (Cyprus)
Hatvani, L. (Hungary)
Ikeda, M. (Japan)
Izobov, N.A. (Belarussia)
Khusainov, D.Ya. (Ukraine)
Kuepper, T. (Germany)
Larin, V.B. (Ukraine)
Leela, S. (USA)
Limarchenko, O.S. (Ukraine)

Mawhin, J. (Belgium)
Mazko, A.G. (Ukraine)
Michel, A.N. (USA)
Miladzhanov, V.G. (Uzbekistan)
Nguang Sing Kiong (New Zealand)
Noldus, E. (Belgium)
Ortega, R. (Spain)
Perel, V. (USA)
Pilipchuk, V.N. (USA)
Prado, A.F.B.A. (Brazil)
Shi Yan (Japan)
Siafarikas, P.D. (Greece)
Šiljak, D.D. (USA)
Sivasundaram, S. (USA)
Sree Hari Rao, V. (India)
Stavrakakis, N.M. (Greece)
Sun Zhen qi (China)
Vincent, T. (USA)
Wai Rong-Jong (Taiwan)

# ADVISORY COMPUTER SCIENCE EDITOR 

A.N.CHERNIENKO, Kiev, Ukraine

ADVISORY TECHNICAL EDITORS<br>L.N.CHERNETSKAYA and S.N.RASSHIVALOVA, Kiev, Ukraine

© 2005, Informath Publishing Group, ISSN 1562-8353 print, ISSN 1813-7385 online, Printed in Ukraine No part of this Journal may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without permission from Infotmath Publishing Group.

## NONLINEAR DYNAMICS AND SYSTEMS THEORY

An International Journal of Research and Surveys
Published since 2001Volume 5Number 32005
CONTENTS
On the Bounded Oscillation of Certain Fourth Order Functional Differential Equations ..... 215
R.P. Agarwal, S.R. Grace and Patricia J.Y. Wong
A Fredholm Operator and Solution Sets to Evolution Systems ..... 229
V. Durikovic and M. Durikovicova
Influence of Propellant Burn Pattern on the Attitude Dynamics of a Spinning Rocket ..... 251
F.O. Eke and J. Sookgaew
A "Patched Conics" Description of the Swing-By of a Group of Pärticles ..... 265
A.F.B.A. Prado
Fault Detection Filter for Linear Time-Delay Systems ..... 273
Maiying Zhong, Hao Ye, Steven X. Ding, Guizeng Wang and Zhou Donghua
Adaptive Output Control of a Class of Time-Varying Uncertain Nonlinear Systems ..... 285
Jing Zhou, Changyun Wen and Ying Zhang
Stability of Nonautonomous Neutral Variable Delay Difference Equation ..... 299
Hai-Long Xing, Xiao-Zhu Zhong, Yan Shi, Jing-Cui Liang and Dong-Hua Wang

# NONLINEAR DYNAMICS AND SYSTEMS THEORY <br> An International Journal of Research and Surveys 


#### Abstract

Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory (ISSN 1562-8353 (Print), ISSN 1813-7385 (Online)) is an international journal published under the auspices of the S.P.Timoshenko Institute of Mechanics of National Academy of Sciences of Ukraine and the Laboratory for Industrial and Aplied Mathematics (LIAM) at York University (Toronto, Canada). It is aimed at publishing high quality original scientific papers and surveys in area of nonlinear dynamics and systems theory and technical reports on solving practical problems. The scope of the journal is very broad covering:


## SCOPE OF THE JOURNAL

Analysis of uncertain systems - Bifurcations and instability in dynamical behaviors Celestial mechanics, variable mass processes, rockets - Control of chaotic systems • Controllability, observability, and structural properties - Deterministic and random vibrations • Differential games - Dynamical systems on manifolds • Dynamics of systems of particles - Hamilton and Lagrange equations - Hysteresis - Identification and adaptive control of stochastic systems - Modelling of real phenomena by ODE, FDE and PDE Nonlinear boundary problems • Nonlinear control systems, guided systems • Nonlinear dynamics in biological systems - Nonlinear fluid dynamics - Nonlinear oscillations and waves - Nonlinear stability in continuum mechanics - Non-smooth dynamical systems with impacts or discontinuities - Numerical methods and simulation - Optimal control and applications • Qualitative analysis of systems with aftereffect • Robustness, sensitivity and disturbance rejection - Soft computing: artificial intelligence, neural networks, fuzzy logic, genetic algorithms, etc. - Stability of discrete systems • Stability of impulsive systems • Stability of large-scale power systems • Stability of linear and nonlinear control systems • Stochastic approximation and optimization • Symmetries and conservation laws

## PUBLICATION AND SUBSCRIPTION INFORMATION

The Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory is published four times per year in 2005.
Base list subscription price per volume: US $\$ 149.00$. This price is available only to individuals whose library subscribes to the journal OR who warrant that the Journal is for their own use and provide a home address for mailing. Separate rates apply to academic and corporate/ government institutions. Our charge includes postage, packing, handling and airmail delivery of all issues. Mail order and inquires to: Department of Processes Stability, S.P.Timoshenko Institute of Mechanics NAS of Ukraine, Nesterov str.,3, 03057, Kiev-57, MSP 680, Ukraine, Tel: ++38-044-456-6140, Fax: ++38-044-456-1939, E-mail: anchern@stability.kiev.ua, http: $\$ www.sciencearea.com.ua

## ABSTRACTING INFORMATION

Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory is currently abstracted/indexed by Zentralblatt MATH and Mathematical Reviews.

# On the Bounded Oscillation of Certain Fourth Order Functional Differential Equations 

R.P. Agarwal ${ }^{1 *}$, S.R. Grace ${ }^{2}$ and Patricia J.Y. Wong ${ }^{3}$<br>${ }^{1}$ Department of Mathematical Sciences, Florida Institute of Technology, Melbourne, FL 32901, U.S.A.<br>${ }^{2}$ Department of Engineering Mathematics, Faculty of Engineering, Cairo University, Orman, Giza 12221, Egypt<br>${ }^{3}$ School of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Nanyang Technological University, 50 Nanyang Avenue, Singapore 639798, Singapore

Received: November 16, 2004; Revised: March 1, 2005


#### Abstract

Some new criteria for the bounded oscillation of a fourth order functional differential equation are established. Comparison results with first/second order equations as well as necessary and sufficient conditions are developed.


Keywords: Oscillation; nonoscillation; half-linear; comparison; necessary conditions.
Mathematics Subject Classification (2000): 34C10, 34C15.

## 1 Introduction

In this paper we are concerned with the oscillatory behavior of the fourth order functional differential equations of the type

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{a_{3}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{a_{2}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{a_{1}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t} x(t)\right)^{\alpha_{1}}\right)\right)^{\alpha_{2}}\right)^{\alpha_{3}}\right)\right)+q(t) f(x[g(t)])=0
$$

or, written more compactly as

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{4} x(t)+q(t) f(x[g(t)])=0 \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^0]where
\[

$$
\begin{gather*}
L_{0} x(t)=x(t), \quad L_{4} x(t)=\frac{d}{d t} L_{3} x(t), \\
L_{k} x(t)=\frac{1}{a_{k}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t} L_{k-1} x(t)\right)^{\alpha_{k}}, \quad k=1,2,3 . \tag{1.2}
\end{gather*}
$$
\]

In what follows, we shall assume that
(i) $a_{i}(t), q(t) \in C\left(\left[t_{0}, \infty\right), R^{+}\right)$, where $R^{+}=(0, \infty), t_{0} \geq 0$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int^{\infty} a_{i}^{1 / \alpha_{i}}(s) d s=\infty, \quad i=1,2,3 \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii) $g(t) \in C\left(\left[t_{0}, \infty\right), R\right)$, where $R=(-\infty, \infty), g^{\prime}(t) \geq 0$ for $t \geq t_{0}$ and $\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} g(t)=\infty$;
(iii) $f \in C(R, R), x f(x)>0$ and $f^{\prime}(x) \geq 0$ for $x \neq 0$;
(iv) $\alpha_{i}, i=1,2,3$, are the ratios of positive odd integers.

The domain $\mathcal{D}\left(L_{4}\right)$ of $L_{4}$ is defined to be the set of all functions $x:\left[t_{x}, \infty\right) \rightarrow R$, $t_{x} \geq t_{0}$ such that $L_{j} x(t), 0 \leq j \leq 4$ exist and are continuous on $\left[t_{x}, \infty\right)$. Our attention is restricted to those solutions $x \in \mathcal{D}\left(L_{4}\right)$ of (1.1) which satisfy $\sup \{|x(t)|: t \geq T\}>0$ for $T \geq t_{x}$. We make the standing hypothesis that equation (1.1) does possess such solutions.

A solution of equation (1.1) is called oscillatory if it has arbitrarily large zeros, otherwise, it is called nonoscillatory. Equation (1.1) is called $B$-oscillatory if all its bounded solutions are oscillatory and is called oscillatory if all its solutions are oscillatory.

In the last three decades there has been an increasing interest in studying the oscillatory and nonoscillatory behavior of solutions of functional differential equations. Most of the work on the subject, however, has been restricted to first and second order equations, as well as, higher order equations of the type

$$
L_{k} x(t)+q(t) f(x[g(t)])=0,
$$

where

$$
L_{0} x(t)=x(t), \quad L_{k} x(t)=\frac{1}{a_{k}(t)} \frac{d}{d t} L_{k-1} x(t), \quad k=1,2, \ldots, n-1, \quad L_{n} x(t)=\frac{d}{d t} L_{n-1} x(t) .
$$

For recent contributions, we refer to $[1-13]$ and the references cited therein.
It appears that little is known regarding the oscillation of equation (1.1). Therefore, our main goal here is to present a systematic study of the oscillation of all bounded solutions of equation (1.1). We shall establish some necessary and sufficient conditions for the bounded oscillation and nonoscillation of equation (1.1). Moreover, our equation is quite general and therefore the results of this paper even in some special cases complement and generalize some known results appeared recently in the literature (see [4-8, 10-13]).

## 2 Main Results

Consider the inequalities

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{a_{1}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t} x(t)\right)^{\alpha_{1}}\right)+q(t) f(x[g(t)]) \leq 0,  \tag{2.1}\\
& \frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{a_{1}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t} x(t)\right)^{\alpha_{1}}\right)+q(t) f(x[g(t)]) \geq 0 \tag{2.2}
\end{align*}
$$

and the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{a_{1}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t} x(t)\right)^{\alpha_{1}}\right)+q(t) f(x[g(t)])=0 \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where (ii) and (iii) hold, $a_{1}(t)$ and $\alpha_{1}$ are as in (i) and (iv) respectively.
Now we shall prove the following lemma.
Lemma 2.1 If inequality (2.1) (inequality (2.2)) has an eventually positive (negative) solution, then equation (2.3) also has an eventually positive (negative) solution.

Proof Let $x(t)$ be an eventually positive solution of inequality (2.1). It is easy to see that $x^{\prime}(t)>0$ eventually. Let

$$
y(t)=\frac{1}{a_{1}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t} x(t)\right)^{\alpha_{1}} .
$$

Then,

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{\prime}(t)=\left(a_{1}(t) y(t)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} \geq 0 \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{0} \geq 0 . \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating (2.4) from $t_{0}$ to $t$, we have

$$
x(t)=x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(a_{1}(s) y(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s
$$

Thus, (2.1) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d y}{d t}+q(t) f\left(x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{g(t)}\left(a_{1}(s) y(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s\right) \leq 0 . \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating (2.5) from $t$ to $T \geq t \geq t_{0}$ and letting $T \rightarrow \infty$, we have

$$
y(t) \geq \int_{t}^{\infty} q(u) f\left(x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{g(u)}\left(a_{1}(s) y(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s\right) d u .
$$

Next, we define a sequence of successive approximations $\left\{z_{j}(t)\right\}$ as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
z_{0}(t) & =y(t) \\
z_{j+1}(t) & =\int_{t}^{\infty} q(u) f\left(x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{g(u)}\left(a_{1}(s) z_{j}(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s\right) d u, \quad j=0,1, \ldots
\end{aligned}
$$

Obviously, we can prove that

$$
0<z_{j}(t) \leq y(t) \quad \text { and } \quad z_{j+1}(t) \leq z_{j}(t), \quad j=0,1, \ldots
$$

Thus the sequence $\left\{z_{j}(t)\right\}$ is positive nonincreasing in $j$ for each $t \geq t_{0}$. This means we may define $z(t)=\lim _{j \rightarrow \infty} z_{j}(t)>0$. Since $0<z(t) \leq z_{j}(t) \leq y(t)$ for all $j \geq 0$, we see that

$$
f\left(x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{g(t)}\left(a_{1}(s) z_{j}(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s\right) \leq f\left(x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{g(t)}\left(a_{1}(s) y(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s\right) .
$$

Now, by the Lebesgue dominated convergence theorem, one can easily obtain

$$
z(t)=\int_{t}^{\infty} q(u) f\left(x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{g(u)}\left(a_{1}(s) z(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s\right) d u
$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d z}{d t}=-q(t) f\left(x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{g(t)}\left(a_{1}(s) z(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s\right) . \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

We denote by

$$
v(t)=x\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{t}\left(a_{1}(s) z(s)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s
$$

Then, $v(t)>0$ and

$$
\frac{d v}{d t}=\left(a_{1}(t) z(t)\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}}
$$

or

$$
z(t)=\frac{1}{a_{1}(t)}\left(\frac{d v}{d t}\right)^{\alpha_{1}}
$$

Equation (2.6) then gives

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{a_{1}(t)}\left(\frac{d v}{d t}\right)^{\alpha_{1}}\right)+q(t) f(v[g(t)])=0
$$

Hence, equation (2.3) has a positive solution $v(t)$. For the case (2.2) the argument is similar and hence is omitted. This completes the proof.

We set

$$
Q(t)=a_{2}^{1 / \alpha_{2}}(t)\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} a_{3}^{1 / \alpha_{3}}(s)\left(\int_{s}^{\infty} q(u) d u\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}}, \quad t \geq t_{0} \geq 0
$$

and $F(x)=f^{1 /\left(\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}\right)}(x), x \in R$.
Now, we present the following comparison result.

Theorem 2.1 Let conditions (i)-(iv) hold. If the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{a_{1}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t} x(t)\right)^{\alpha_{1}}\right)+Q(t) F(x[g(t)])=0 \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

is oscillatory, then equation (1.1) is $B$-oscillatory.
Proof Let $x(t)$ be a bounded nonoscillatory solution of equation (1.1), say, $x(t)>0$ for $t \geq t_{0} \geq 0$. By condition (1.3), it is easy seen that $x(t)$ satisfies the inequalities

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{\prime}(t)>0, \quad L_{2} x(t)<0, \quad L_{3} x(t)>0 \quad \text { and } \quad L_{4} x(t) \leq 0 \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{1} \geq t_{0} . \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating equation (1.1) from $t$ to $T \geq t \geq t_{1}$ and letting $T \rightarrow \infty$, we find

$$
L_{3} x(t) \geq \int_{t}^{\infty} q(s) f(x[g(s)]) d s
$$

or

$$
\frac{1}{a_{3}(t)}\left(\frac{d}{d t} L_{2} x(t)\right)^{\alpha_{3}} \geq\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} q(s) d s\right) f(x[g(t)]) .
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} L_{2} x(t) \geq a_{3}^{1 / \alpha_{3}}(t)\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} f^{1 / \alpha_{3}}(x[g(t)]), \quad t \geq t_{1} . \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Once again, we integrate (2.9) from $t$ to $T_{1} \geq t \geq t_{1}$ and let $T_{1} \rightarrow \infty$, to obtain

$$
-L_{2} x(t) \geq\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} a_{3}^{1 / \alpha_{3}}(u)\left(\int_{u}^{\infty} q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d u\right) f^{1 / \alpha_{3}}(x[g(t)]), \quad t \geq t_{1},
$$

or

$$
\begin{align*}
-\frac{d}{d t} L_{1} x(t) & \geq a_{2}^{1 / \alpha_{2}}(t)\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} a_{3}^{1 / \alpha_{3}}(u)\left(\int_{u}^{\infty} q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d u\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} f^{1 /\left(\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}\right)}(x[g(t)])  \tag{2.10}\\
& =Q(t) F(x[g(t)]),
\end{align*}
$$

for $t \geq t_{1}$. By applying Lemma 2.1, we see that equation (2.7) has a positive solution, a contradiction. This completes the proof.

Now we assume that the function $F(x)=f^{1 /\left(\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}\right)}(x), x \in R$, satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
-F(-x y) \geq F(x y) \geq F(x) F(y) \quad \text { for } \quad x y>0 \tag{2.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(t) \leq t . \tag{2.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Also, we let

$$
\eta\left[t, t_{0}\right]=\int_{t_{0}}^{t} a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}(s) d s
$$

and for $g(t) \geq T$ for some $T \geq t_{0}$,

$$
\bar{Q}(t)=Q(t) F(\eta[g(t), T]) .
$$

Now, we present the following result.

Theorem 2.2 Let conditions (i)-(iv), (2.11) and (2.12) hold. If the first order equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} y(t)+\bar{Q}(t) F\left(y^{1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(t)]\right)=0 \tag{2.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

is oscillatory, then equation (1.1) is $B$-oscillatory.
Proof Let $x(t)$ be a bounded nonoscillatory solution of equation (1.1), say, $x(t)>0$ for $t \geq t_{0} \geq 0$. As in the proof of Theorem 2.1, we obtain (2.8) and (2.10) for $t \geq t_{1}$. Now

$$
x(t)-x\left(t_{1}\right)=\int_{t_{1}}^{t} x^{\prime}(s) d s=\int_{t_{1}}^{t}\left(a_{1}^{-1 / \alpha_{1}}(s) x^{\prime}(s)\right) a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}(s) d s
$$

Using the fact that $a_{1}^{-1 / \alpha_{1}}(t) x^{\prime}(t)$ is nonincreasing on $\left[t_{1}, \infty\right)$, we find

$$
x(t) \geq\left(a_{1}^{-1 / \alpha_{1}}(t) x^{\prime}(t)\right) \int_{t_{1}}^{t} a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}(s) d s
$$

or

$$
x(t) \geq \eta\left[t, t_{1}\right]\left(a_{1}^{-1 / \alpha_{1}}(t) x^{\prime}(t)\right) \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{1} .
$$

Thus, there exists a $t_{2} \geq t_{1}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
x[g(t)] \geq \eta\left[g(t), t_{1}\right]\left(Z^{1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(t)]\right) \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{2}, \tag{2.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $Z(t)=\left(x^{\prime}(t)\right)^{\alpha_{1}} / a_{1}(t), t \geq t_{2}$. Using (2.11) and (2.14) in (2.10) we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} Z(t)+\bar{Q}(t) F\left(Z^{1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(t)]\right) \leq 0 \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{2} \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating (2.15) from $t$ to $T \geq t \geq t_{2}$ and letting $T \rightarrow \infty$, we obtain

$$
Z(t) \geq \int_{t}^{\infty} \bar{Q}(s) F\left(Z^{1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(s)]\right) d s
$$

As in $[9,12]$, it is now easy to conclude that there exists a positive solution $y(t)$ of the equation (2.13) with $\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} y(t)=0$. This contradicts the hypothesis and completes the proof.

By using a well known oscillation result in [9, Corollary 7.6.1], the following corollary is immediate.

Corollary 2.1 Let conditions (i)-(iv), (2.11) and (2.12) hold. Then, equation (1.1) is $B$-oscillatory if one of the following conditions holds:
( $\left.\mathrm{I}_{1}\right) F\left(y^{1 / \alpha_{1}}\right) / y \geq k>0, y \neq 0$, where $k$ is a constant, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\liminf _{t \rightarrow \infty} \int_{g(t)}^{t} \bar{Q}(s) d s>\frac{1}{e k} \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

( $\left.\mathrm{I}_{2}\right) \int_{ \pm 0} \frac{d u}{F\left(u^{1 / \alpha_{1}}\right)}<\infty$,
and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int^{\infty} \bar{Q}(s) d s=\infty \tag{2.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, we let $\bar{F}(x)=f^{1 /\left(\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}\right)}(x), x \in R$ and assume that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int^{ \pm \infty} \frac{d u}{\bar{F}(u)}<\infty \tag{2.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, we prove the following oscillation result.
Theorem 2.3 Let conditions (i)-(iv), (2.12) and (2.20) hold. If

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int^{\infty} g^{\prime}(u) a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(u)]\left(\int_{u}^{\infty} Q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d u=\infty \tag{2.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

then equation (1.1) is $B$-oscillatory.
Proof Let $x(t)$ be a bounded nonoscillatory solution of equation (1.1), say, $x(t)>0$ for $t \geq t_{0} \geq 0$. As in the proof of Theorem 2.1, we obtain (2.10) for $t \geq t_{1} \geq t_{0}$. Now, one can easily see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{1} x(t) \geq\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} Q(s) d s\right) F(x[g(t)]) \tag{2.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

or

$$
a_{1}^{-1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(t)] x^{\prime}[g(t)] \geq a_{1}^{-1 / \alpha_{1}}(t) x^{\prime}(t) \geq\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} Q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} \bar{F}(x[g(t)])
$$

for $t \geq t_{2} \geq t_{1}$. Hence, it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{x^{\prime}[g(t)] g^{\prime}(t)}{\bar{F}(x[g(t)])} \geq g^{\prime}(t) a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(t)]\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} Q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{2} \tag{2.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating both sides of (2.23) from $t_{2}$ to $t$, we get

$$
\int_{t_{2}}^{t} g^{\prime}(u) a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(u)]\left(\int_{u}^{\infty} Q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d u \leq \int_{x\left[g\left(t_{2}\right)\right]}^{x[g(t)]} \frac{d v}{\bar{F}(v)} \leq \int_{x\left[g\left(t_{2}\right)\right]}^{\infty} \frac{d v}{\bar{F}(v)}<\infty
$$

which contradicts condition (2.21). This completes the proof.
In [5], we have compared the oscillation of nonlinear equations of type (2.7) with those of second order linear equations. In fact, we obtained the following results.

Lemma 2.2 Let $0<\alpha_{1} \leq 1, g^{\prime}(t)>0$ for $t \geq t_{0}, 0<\bar{q}(t)=\int_{t}^{\infty} Q(s) d s<\infty$ and $F(x)=x^{\beta}$, where $\beta$ is the ratio of positive odd integers. Then, equation (2.7) is oscillatory if for all large $t$, the linear second order equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{C(t)}{g^{\prime}(t)}\left(\frac{(\bar{q}(t))^{\alpha_{1}-1}}{a_{1}[g(t)]}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} y^{\prime}(t)\right)^{\prime}+\beta Q(t) y(t)=0 \tag{2.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

is oscillatory, where

$$
C(t)= \begin{cases}c_{1}, c_{1}>0 \quad \text { is any constant }, & \text { when } \beta>\alpha_{1} \\ 1, & \text { when } \beta=\alpha_{1} \\ c_{2} \eta^{\left(\alpha_{1}-\beta\right) / \alpha_{1}}\left[g(t), t_{0}\right], c_{2}>0 & \text { is any constant, } \\ \text { when } \beta<\alpha_{1}\end{cases}
$$

Lemma 2.3 Let $\alpha_{1} \geq 1, g^{\prime}(t)>0$ for $t \geq t_{0}$ and $F(x)=x^{\beta}$, where $\beta$ is the ratio of positive odd integers. Then, equation (2.7) is oscillatory if for all large $t$, the linear second order equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}[g(t)] g^{\prime}(t) \eta^{\alpha_{1}-1}\left[g(t), t_{0}\right]} Z^{\prime}(t)\right)^{\prime}+\beta Q(t) Z(t)=0 \tag{2.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

is oscillatory, where

$$
\bar{C}(t)= \begin{cases}c_{1}, c_{1}>0 \quad \text { is any constant, } & \text { when } \beta>\alpha_{1} \\ 1, & \text { when } \beta=\alpha_{1} \\ c_{2} \eta^{\alpha_{1}-\beta}\left[g(t), t_{0}\right], \quad c_{2}>0 \quad \text { is any constant, } & \text { when } \beta<\alpha_{1}\end{cases}
$$

By Lemmas 2.2 and 2.3 we can replace equation (2.7) in Theorem 2.1 by equation (2.24), or equation (2.25). The statements and formulations of the results are left to the reader.

Next, we present the following result.
Theorem 2.4 Let conditions (i) - (iv) hold. If

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int^{\infty} a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}(u)\left(\int_{u}^{\infty} Q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d u=\infty \tag{2.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

then equation (1.1) is $B$-oscillatory.
Proof Let $x(t)$ be a bounded nonoscillatory solution of equation (1.1), say, $x(t)>0$ for $t \geq t_{0} \geq 0$. As in the proof of Theorem 2.3, we obtain (2.22) for $t \geq t_{1}$. Since $x(t)$ is an increasing function on $\left[t_{1}, \infty\right)$, there exist a $t_{2} \geq t_{1}$ and a constant $C>0$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
x[g(t)] \geq C \quad \text { for } \quad t \geq t_{2} . \tag{2.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using (2.27) in (2.22), one can easily see that

$$
x^{\prime}(t) \geq a_{1}^{1 / \alpha_{1}}(t)\left(\int_{t}^{\infty} Q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} \bar{F}(c), \quad t \geq t_{2}
$$

Integrating the above inequality from $t_{2}$ to $t$ and using (2.26) we arrive at the desired contradiction.

Next, we will give some necessary and sufficient conditions for all bounded solutions of equation (1.1) to be oscillatory or nonoscillatory.

Theorem 2.5 Let conditions (i)-(iv) hold. Then, equation (1.1) is B-oscillatory if and only if condition (2.26) is satisfied.

Proof Suppose that (2.26) holds and assume that equation (1.1) has a bounded nonoscillatory solution $x(t)$. The proof is similar to that of Theorem 2.4 and hence omitted.

Assume that (2.26) does not hold. We may suppose that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{0}}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}<\infty, \quad t_{0} \geq 0 \tag{2.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, we can choose $T \geq t_{0}$ sufficiently large such that for $t \geq T$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{T}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} f(\gamma) q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}<\frac{\gamma}{2} \tag{2.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some constant $\gamma>0$. Let $x(t)$ be a solution of the following equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=\gamma-\int_{t}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(x[g(s)]) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1} \tag{2.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we easily see that $x(t)$ is a solution of equation (1.1). Next, we shall show that equation (2.30) has a bounded nonoscillatory solution $x(t)$ by using the fixed point theorem of Schauder.

We introduce the Banach space $X$ of all continuous and bounded real-valued functions on the interval $\left[t_{0}, \infty\right)$ endowed with the usual sup norm $\|\cdot\|$. We define a bounded, convex and closed subset $\mathcal{B}$ of $X$ as

$$
\mathcal{B}=\left\{x \in X: \quad \frac{\gamma}{2} \leq x(t) \leq \gamma, \quad t \geq t_{0}\right\}
$$

Next, let $S$ be a mapping defined on $\mathcal{B}$ as follows: For $x \in \mathcal{B}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& (S x)(t) \\
& = \begin{cases}\gamma-\int_{t}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(x[g(s)]) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1} \\
(S x)(T), & t \geq T \\
t_{0} \leq t \leq T\end{cases} \tag{2.31}
\end{align*}
$$

Then the mapping $S$ satisfies the following:
( $I_{1}$ ) $S$ maps $\mathcal{B}$ into $\mathcal{B}$. In fact, for any $x \in \mathcal{B}$, from (2.29) and (2.31) we have

$$
\gamma \geq(S x)(t) \geq \gamma-\frac{\gamma}{2}=\frac{\gamma}{2}, \quad t \geq t_{0}
$$

So $S x \in \mathcal{B}$.
( $I_{2}$ ) The mapping $S$ is continuous on $\mathcal{B}$. Let $x \in \mathcal{B}$ and $\left\{x_{j}\right\}$ be a sequence in $\mathcal{B}$ converging to $x$. We shall show that $S x_{j}$ converges to $S x$. By (2.29), for any $\epsilon>0$, we can choose $T_{0} \geq T$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{T_{0}}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(\gamma) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}<\frac{\epsilon}{3} \tag{2.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore, we can see that the series $f\left(x_{j}\right)$ converges to $f(x)$ uniformly with respect to $j$. So, we can choose $m$ such that for all $j \geq m$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mid \int_{t_{0}}^{T_{0}}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f\left(x_{j}[g(s)]\right) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1} \\
& -\int_{t_{0}}^{T_{0}}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(x[g(s)]) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1} \left\lvert\,<\frac{\epsilon}{3}\right. \tag{2.33}
\end{align*}
$$

In the following, we shall show that $\left|\left(S x_{j}\right)(t)-(S x)(t)\right|<\epsilon$ for any $t$ and $j \geq m$.
(i) If $t \geq T_{0}$, then from (2.31) and (2.32), we can easily find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mid\left(S x_{j}\right)(t) & -(S x)(t) \mid \\
& \leq 2\left|\int_{t}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(\gamma) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}\right| \\
& <\frac{2 \epsilon}{3}<\epsilon \text { for } j \geq m .
\end{aligned}
$$

(ii) If $t \leq T_{0}$, from (2.31), (2.32) and (2.33), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left|\left(S x_{j}\right)(t)-(S x)(t)\right| \\
& \leq \mid \int_{t}^{T_{0}}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f\left(x_{j}[g(s)]\right) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1} \\
&-\int_{t}^{T_{0}}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(x[g(s)]) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1} \mid \\
&+\left|\int_{T_{0}}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f\left(x_{j}[g(s)]\right) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}\right| \\
&+\left|\int_{T_{0}}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(x[g(s)]) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
<\frac{\epsilon}{3}+\frac{\epsilon}{3}+\frac{\epsilon}{3}=\epsilon \quad \text { for } \quad j \geq m
$$

Clearly, (i) and (ii) together yield that $\left|\left(S x_{j}\right)(t)-(S x)(t)\right|<\epsilon$ for any $t$ and $j \geq m$ which completes the proof that the mapping $S$ is continuous on $\mathcal{B}$.
$\left(I_{3}\right)$ The set $S(\mathcal{B})$ is relatively compact. For any $x \in \mathcal{B}$ and every $t \geq t_{0}$, we have $|(S x)(t)| \leq \gamma$. Therefore, $S \mathcal{B}$ is uniformly bounded. Furthermore, we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
|(S x)(t)-\gamma| \leq\left|\int_{t}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(\gamma) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}\right| \tag{2.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, from (2.28) and (2.34), we conclude that $S \mathcal{B}$ is equiconvergent at $\infty$. Now, for any $x \in \mathcal{B}$ and every $t_{1}, t_{2}$ with $T \leq t_{1} \leq t_{2}$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|(S x)\left(t_{2}\right)-(S x)\left(t_{1}\right)\right| \\
& \quad \leq\left|\int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{s_{1}}^{\infty}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{s_{2}}^{\infty}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{s_{3}}^{\infty} q(s) f(\gamma) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}\right| .
\end{aligned}
$$

From this it follows that $S \mathcal{B}$ is equicontinuous. Finally, by the given compactness criterion (see [13]), we conclude that $S \mathcal{B}$ is relatively compact.

Thus, by the Schauder fixed point theorem [13], it follows that (2.30) has a positive solution $x(t)$. This proves the necessity.

The following theorem provides a necessary and sufficient condition for the existence of a bounded solution of equation (1.1).

Theorem 2.6 Assume that (i)-(iv) except condition (1.3) hold, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int^{\infty} q(s) d s=\infty \tag{2.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then a necessary and sufficient condition for equation (1.1) to have a positive solution $x(t)$ which satisfies $\beta_{2} \geq x(t) \geq \beta_{1}>0$ ( $\beta_{1}$ and $\beta_{2}$ are constants) for $t \geq t_{0}$ is that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{0}}^{\infty}\left(a_{1}\left(s_{1}\right) \int_{t_{0}}^{s_{1}}\left(a_{2}\left(s_{2}\right) \int_{t_{0}}^{s_{2}}\left(a_{3}\left(s_{3}\right) \int_{t_{0}}^{s_{3}} q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}} d s_{3}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{2}} d s_{2}\right)^{1 / \alpha_{1}} d s_{1}<\infty \tag{2.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof Necessity If $x(t)$ is a positive solution of equation (1.1) and the condition $\beta_{2} \geq x(t) \geq \beta_{1}>0$ is satisfied, then we have in view of equation (1.1),

$$
L_{3} x(t)=L_{3} x\left(t_{0}\right)-\int_{t_{0}}^{t} q(s) f(x[g(s)]) d s \leq L_{3} x\left(t_{0}\right)-f\left(\beta_{1}\right) \int_{t_{0}}^{t} q(s) d s
$$

If $t$ is large enough, in view of (2.35), we have $L_{3} x(t)<0$. Then, for all large $t_{0}$,

$$
L_{3} x(t)<-f\left(\beta_{1}\right) \int_{t_{0}}^{t} q(s) d s
$$

or

$$
\frac{d}{d t} L_{2} x(t)<-f^{1 / \alpha_{3}}\left(\beta_{1}\right)\left(a_{3}(t) \int_{t_{0}}^{t} q(s) d s\right)^{1 / \alpha_{3}}
$$

The rest of the proof is similar to the proof of the sufficiency part of Theorem 2.5 and hence omitted.

The proof of sufficiency is similar to the proof of necessity part of Theorem 2.5. This completes the proof.

Remark 2.1 From the above study of $B$-oscillation of equation (1.1), we are concerned with the nonexistence of solutions of equation (1.1) satisfying (2.8). This class of solutions of (1.1) may include some unbounded solutions. Therefore, some modification in the definition of $B$-oscillation of equation (1.1) is required to include bounded as well as some unbounded solutions of equation (1.1). The details are left to the reader.

Remark 2.2 The results of this paper can be extended to neutral equations of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{4}(x(t)+p(t) x[\tau(t)])+q(t) f(x[g(t)])=0 \tag{2.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p(t) \in C\left(\left[t_{0}, \infty\right),[0, \infty)\right)$ and $\tau(t) \in C\left(\left[t_{0}, \infty\right), R\right), \tau^{\prime}(t)>0$ for $t \geq t_{0}$ and $\lim _{t \rightarrow \infty} \tau(t)=0$. Here, we refer to our papers [4-6] and omit the details.

The following example illustrates some of the results obtained.
Example 2.1 Consider the differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{1}{t^{2}}\left(\frac{d}{d t}\left(t\left(\frac{d}{d t}\left(t\left(\frac{d}{d t} x(t)\right)^{3}\right)\right)\right)^{3}\right)\right)+\frac{2}{t^{4}} x(t)=0 \tag{2.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is actually (1.1) with

$$
\begin{gathered}
\alpha_{1}=3, \quad \alpha_{2}=1, \quad \alpha_{3}=3, \quad a_{1}(t)=\frac{1}{t}, \quad a_{2}(t)=\frac{1}{t}, \quad a_{3}(t)=t^{2}, \\
q(t)=\frac{2}{t^{4}}, \quad g(t)=t, \quad f(x)=x .
\end{gathered}
$$

By direct computation we obtain

$$
Q(t)=\frac{1}{2} t^{-7 / 3}, \quad \eta[g(t), T] \leq \frac{3}{2} t^{2 / 3}, \quad \bar{Q}(t)=Q(t) F(\eta[g(t), T]) \leq t^{-19 / 9}
$$

Clearly, conditions (i)-(iv), (2.11) and (2.12) are fulfilled. Further, it can be easily checked that (2.17) is not satisfied, and also

$$
\int^{\infty} \bar{Q}(s) d s \leq \int^{\infty} s^{-19 / 9} d s<\infty
$$

which implies (2.19) is not met. Thus, we see that both conditions $\left(\mathrm{I}_{1}\right)$ and $\left(\mathrm{I}_{2}\right)$ of Corollary 2.1 are not fulfilled.

Moreover, we can verify easily that condition (2.20) is not satisfied but (2.21) and (2.26) are met. Thus, the conditions of Theorem 2.3 are not all satisfied, whereas those of Theorems 2.4 and 2.5 are fulfilled.

Hence, on one hand we cannot conclude from Corollary 2.1 and Theorem 2.3 that (2.38) is $B$-oscillatory, while on the other hand Theorems 2.4 and 2.5 give that (2.38) is $B$-oscillatory. In fact, we observe that (2.38) has a solution given by $x(t)=t$, which is unbounded and nonoscillatory.

## References

[1] Agarwal, R.P., Grace, S.R. and O'Regan, D. Oscillation Theory for Difference and Functional Differential Equations. Kluwer, Dordrecht, 2000.
[2] Agarwal, R.P., Grace, S.R. and O'Regan, D. Oscillation Theory for Second Order Linear, Half-Linear, Superlinear and Sublinear Dynamic Equations. Kluwer, Dordrecht, 2002.
[3] Agarwal, R.P., Grace, S.R. and O'Regan, D. Oscillation Theory for Second Order Dynamic Equations. Taylor \& Francis, U.K., 2003.
[4] Agarwal, R.P., Grace, S.R. and O'Regan, D. On the oscillation of certain functional differential equations via comparison methods. J. Math. Anal. Appl. 286 (2003) 577-600.
[5] Agarwal, R.P., Grace, S.R. and O'Regan, D. Linearization of second order sublinear oscillation theorems. Communications in Appl. Anal. 8 (2004) 219-235.
[6] Agarwal, R.P., Grace, S.R. and O'Regan, D. The oscillation of certain higher order functional differential equations. Mathl. Comput. Modelling 37 (2003) 705-728.
[7] Agarwal, R.P., Grace, S.R. and O'Regan, D. On the oscillation of second order functional differential equations. Adv. Math. Sci. Appl. 12 (2002) 257-272.
[8] Agarwal, R.P., Grace, S.R. and O'Regan, D. Nonoscillatory solutions for higher order dynamic equations. J. London Math. Soc. 67 (2003) 165-179.
[9] Györi, I. and Ladas, G. Oscillation Theory of Delay Differential Equations with Applications. Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1991.
[10] Kitamura, Y. Oscillation of functional differential equations with general deviating arguments. Hiroshima Math. J. 15 (1985) 445-491.
[11] Kusano, T. and Naito, M. On fourth order nonlinear oscillations. J. London Math. Soc. 14(2) (1976) 91-105.
[12] Philos, Ch.G. On the existence of nonoscillatory solutions tending to zero at $\infty$ for differential equations with positive delays. Arch. Math. 36 (1981) 168-178.
[13] Philos, Ch.G. Oscillatory and asymptotic behavior of the bounded solutions of differential equations with deviating arguments. Hiroshima Math. J. 8 (1978) 31-48.

# A Fredholm Operator and Solution Sets to Evolution Systems 

V. Ďurikovič1* and M. Ďurikovičová ${ }^{2}$<br>${ }^{1}$ Department of Applied Mathematics, SS. Cyril and Methodius University, nám. J. Herdu 291700 Trnava, Slovak Republic<br>${ }^{2}$ Department of Mathematics, Slovak Technical University, nám. Slobody 1781231 Bratislava, Slovak Republic

Received: January 12, 2005; Revised: May 11, 2005


#### Abstract

In this paper we deal with the Peano phenomenon for general initial boundary-value problems of quasilinear evolution systems with arbitrary even order space derivatives. The nonlinearity is a continuous or continuously Frechét differentiable function. Qualitative and quantitative structure of solution sets is studied by the theory of proper, Fredholm and Nemitskiǐ operators. These results can be applied to the different technical and natural science models.


Keywords: Evolution systems; an initial boundary-value problem; a linear Fredholm operator; a proper and coercive operator; a bifurcation point; a surjectivity.
Mathematics Subject Classification (2000): 35G30, 37L05, 47H30, 47J35.

## 0 Introduction

The Peano phenomenon of the existence of a solution continum of the initial value problem for ordinary differential systems is well-known. This phenomenon has been studied by many authors in $[3-5,8,17,27]$. The structure of solution sets for second order partial differential problems was observed in the authors papers [12, 13].

In this paper we shall study generic properties of quasilinear initial boundary-value problems for evolution systems of an even order with the continuous or continuous differentiable nonlinearities and the general boundary value conditions. In special Hölder spaces we use the Nikolskiǐ decomposition theorem from [29, P. 233] for linear Fredholm operators, the global inversion theorem of $[9,6]$ and $[7$, PP. $42-43]$ and the Ambrosetti

[^1]solution quantitive results from [2, P. 216]. In the consideration on surjectivity the generalized Leray-Schauder condition is employed which is similar to that one in [20]. In the case of nonlinear Fredholm operators we use the main Quinn and Smale theorem from [22] and [24].

The present results allow us to observe different problems describing dynamics of mechanical processes (bendding, vibration), phisycal-heating processes, reaction-diffusion processes in chemical and biological technologies or in the ecology.

## 1 The Formulation of Problem, Assumptions and Spaces

The set $\Omega \subset R^{n}$ for $n \in N$ means a bounded domain with the boundary $\partial \Omega$. The real number $T$ will be positive and $Q=(0, T] \times \Omega, \Gamma=(0, T] \times \partial \Omega$. If the multiindex $k=\left(k_{1}, \ldots, k_{n}\right)$ with $|k|=\sum_{i=1}^{n} k_{i}$, then we use the notation $D_{x}^{k}$ for the differential operator $\frac{\partial^{|k|}}{\partial x_{1}^{k_{1}} \ldots \partial x_{n}^{k_{n}}}$ and $D_{t}$ for $\frac{\partial}{\partial t}$. If the module $|k|=0$ then $D_{x}^{k}$ means an identity mapping. The symbol $\mathrm{cl} M$ means the closure of the set $M$ in $R^{n}$.

In this paper we consider the general system of $p \geq 1$ nonlinear differential equations (parabolic or non-parabolic type) of an arbitrary even order $2 b$ ( $b$ is a positive integer) with $p$ unknown functions in the column vector form $\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{p}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}=u: \operatorname{cl} Q \rightarrow R^{p}$. Its matrix form is given as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A\left(t, x, D_{t}, D_{x}\right) u+f\left(t, x, \bar{D}_{x}^{\gamma} u\right)=g(t, x) \quad \text { for } \quad(t, x) \in Q, \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
A\left(t, x, D_{t}, D_{x}\right) u=D_{t} u-\sum_{|k|=2 b} a_{k}(t, x) D_{x}^{k} u-\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b-1} a_{k}(t, x) D_{x}^{k} u,
$$

and $\bar{D}_{x}^{\gamma} u$ is a vector function whose components are derivatives $D_{x}^{\gamma} u_{l}$ with the different multiindices $0 \leq|\gamma| \leq 2 b-1$ for $l=1, \ldots, p$.

The system of boundary conditions is given by the vector equation with the $b p$ components

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.B\left(t, x, D_{x}\right) u\right|_{c l \Gamma}=\left.\left(B_{1}\left(t, x, D_{x}\right) u, \ldots, B_{b p}\left(t, x, D_{x}\right) u\right)^{\mathrm{T}}\right|_{c l \Gamma}=0 \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

in which

$$
B_{j}\left(t, x, D_{x}\right) u=\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq r_{j}} b_{j k}(t, x) D_{x}^{k} u
$$

for an integer $0 \leq r_{j} \leq 2 b-1$ and $j=1, \ldots, b p$.
Further the initial value homogeneous condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(0, x)=0 \quad \text { for } \quad x \in \bar{\Omega} \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

is considered.
Here the given functions are the following mappings: $a_{k}=\left(a_{k}^{h l}\right)_{h, l=1}^{p}: c l Q \rightarrow R^{p^{2}}$ for $0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b$ are $(p \times p)$-matrix functions; $b_{j k}=\left(b_{j k}^{1}, \ldots, b_{j k}^{p}\right): c l \Gamma \rightarrow R^{p}$ for $0 \leq|k| \leq r_{j}, j=1, \ldots, b_{p}$ are row vector functions; $f=\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{p}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}: c l Q \times R^{\kappa} \rightarrow R^{p}$
and $g=\left(g_{1}, \ldots, g_{p}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}: \operatorname{cl} Q \rightarrow R^{p}$ are column vector functions, where $\kappa$ is a positive integer given by the inequality

$$
\kappa \leq\left[\binom{n-1}{0}+\binom{n}{1}+\binom{n+1}{2}+\cdots+\binom{n+|\gamma|-2}{|\gamma|-1}+\binom{n+|\gamma|-1}{|\gamma|}\right] p
$$

Under several supplementary assumptions, problem (1.1)-(1.3) defines homeomorphism between some Hölder spaces. Now, we formulate these suppositions.
(P) A $\delta$-uniform parabolic condition holds for system (1.1) in the sense of J.G. Petrovskiiǐ, $\delta>0$.
The system (1.1) and boundary condition (1.2) are connected by
(C) a $\delta^{+}$-uniform complementary condition with $\delta^{+}>0$ and
(Q) a compatibility condition.

The coefficients of the operator $A\left(t, x, D_{t}, D_{x}\right)$ from (1.1) and of $B\left(t, x, D_{x}\right)$ from (1.2) and the boundary $\partial \Omega$ satisfy
$\left(\mathrm{S}^{l+\alpha}\right)$ a smoothness condition for a nonnegative integer $l$ and a number $\alpha \in(0,1)$.
We shall be employed with the Banach spaces of continuously differentiable functions $C_{x}^{l}\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right)$ and $C_{t, x}^{l / 2 b, l}\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right)$ and the Hölder spaces $C_{x}^{l+\alpha}\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right)$, $C_{t, x}^{(l+\alpha) / 2 b, l+\alpha}\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right)$ for a nonnegative integer $l$ and $\alpha \in(0,1)$.

For the exact definition of conditions (P), (C), (Q), $\left(S^{l+\alpha}\right)$ see [19, PP. 12-21] and for the definition of spaces see [19, PP. 8-12] or [11].

The homeomorphism result for (1.1)-(1.3) can be formulated as follows:
Proposition 1.1 (see [19, P. 21] and [15, PP. 182-183]) Let the conditions (P), (C) and $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha}\right)$ be satisfied for $\alpha \in(0,1)$. Necessary and sufficient conditions for the existence and uniqueness of the solution

$$
u \in C_{t, x}^{(2 b+\alpha) / 2 b, 2 b+\alpha}\left(\operatorname{cl} Q, R^{p}\right)
$$

of linear problem (1.1)-(1.3) for $f=0$ is

$$
g \in C_{t, x}^{\alpha / 2 b, \alpha}\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right)
$$

and the compatibility condition (Q).
Moreover, there exists a constant $c>0$ independent of $g$ such that

$$
c^{-1}\|g\|_{\alpha / 2 b, \alpha, Q, p} \leq\|u\|_{(2 b+\alpha) / 2 b, 2 b+\alpha, Q, p} \leq c\|g\|_{\alpha / 2 b, \alpha, Q, p}
$$

## 2 General Results

In this part we remind some notions and assertions from the nonlinear functional analysis applied in the fundamental lemmas and theorems.

Throughout this paper we shall assume that $X$ and $Y$ are Banach spaces either both over the real or complex field.

In the Zeidler books [31, PP. 365-366] and [32, PP. 667-668] we find definitions of the linear and nonlinear Fredholm operator.

The following proposition gives the necessary and sufficient condition for a linear operator to be Fredholm.

Proposition 2.1 (S.M. Nikoľskiǐ [29, P. 233]) A linear bounded operator $A: X \rightarrow Y$ is Fredholm of the zero index iff $A=C+T$, where $C: X \rightarrow Y$ is a linear homeomorphism and $T: X \rightarrow Y$ is a linear completely continuous operator.

In the theory and applications of nonlinear operators, the notions as a proper, $\sigma$-proper, closed, coercive operator (for definitions see books [31] and [32]) are very frequent. Their significant application gives the following statements.

Proposition 2.2 (the Ambrosetti theorem [2, P. 216]) Let $F \in C(X, Y)$ be a proper mapping. Then the cardinal number card $F^{-1}(q)$ of the set $F^{-1}(q)$ is constant and finite (it may be zero) for every $q$ taken from the same component (nonempty and connected subset) of the set $Y \backslash F(\Sigma)$. Here $\Sigma$ means a closed set of all points $u \in X$ at which $F$ is not locally invertible.

A relation between the local invertibility and homeomorphism of $X$ onto $Y$ gives the global inverse mapping theorem.

Proposition 2.3 (R. Cacciopoli [9], E. Zeidler [31, P. 174]) Let $F \in C(X, Y)$ be a locally invertible mapping in $X$. Then $F$ is a homeomorphism of $X$ onto $Y$ iff $F$ is proper.

The following propositions give necessary and sufficient conditions for the proper mapping.

Proposition 2.4 (see [31, P. 176], [23, P. 49] and [27, P. 20]) Let $F \in C(X, Y)$.
(i) If $F$ is proper, then $F$ is a nonconstant closed mapping.
(ii) If $\operatorname{dim} X=+\infty$ and $F$ is a nonconstant closed mapping, then $F$ is proper.

Proposition 2.5 (see [23, PP. 58-59], [31, P. 498] and [27, P. 20]) Suppose that $F: X \rightarrow Y$ and $F=F_{1}+F_{2}$, where
(i) $F_{1}: X \rightarrow Y$ is a continuous proper mapping on $X$ and
(ii) $F_{2}: X \rightarrow Y$ is complete continuous.

Then
(i) the restriction of the mapping $F$ to an arbitrary bounded closed set in $X$ is a proper mapping;
(ii) if moreover, $F$ is coercive, then $F$ is a proper mapping.

Now we can formulate some sufficient conditions for the surjectivity of an operator.
Proposition 2.6 (see [27, PP. 24 and 27]) Let $X$ be a real Banach space. Suppose
(i) $P=I-f: X \rightarrow X$ is a condensing field, where $I: X \rightarrow X$ is the identity,
(ii) $P$ is coercive,
(iii) there exists a strictly solvable field $G=I-g: X \rightarrow X$ and $R>0$ such that for all solutions $u \in X$ of the equation

$$
P(u)=k G(u)
$$

and for all $k<0$ the estimation $\|u\|_{X}<R$ holds.
Then the following statements are true:
(i) $P$ is a proper mapping,
(ii) $P$ is strictly surjective,
(iii) card $F^{-1}(q)$ is constant, finite and nonzero for every $q$ from the same connected component of the set $Y \backslash F(\Sigma)$. For $\Sigma$ see Proposition 2.2.

The definition of a condensing field is understood in the sense given in [10, P. 69]. For the definition of a strict solvable field and strict surjective field see in [29].

Remark 2.1 It is clear that an operator $F$ is strictly surjective, then it is surjective and if $F$ is strictly solvable, then it is also solvable. Moreover, if $F$ is strictly surjective, then it is strictly solvable, too.

Proposition 2.7 (the Schauder invariance of domain theorem [31, P. 705]) Let $F:(M \subseteq X) \rightarrow X$ be continuous and locally compact perturbation of identity on the open nonempty set $M$ in the Banach space $X$. Then
(i) if $F$ is locally injective on $M$ so $F$ is an open mapping;
(ii) if $F$ is injective on $M$ so $F$ is a homeomorphism from $M$ onto the open set $F(M)$.

For the compact perturbation of $C^{1}-$ Fredholm operator we shall use the following proposition.

Proposition 2.8 (E. Zeidler [32, P. 672]) Let $A: D(A) \subset X \rightarrow Y$ be a $C^{1}-$ Fredholm operator on the open set $D(A)$ and $B: D(A) \rightarrow Y$ be a compact mapping from the class $C^{1}$. Then $A+B: D(A) \rightarrow Y$ is a Fredholm (possible nonlinear) operator with the same index as $A$ at each point of $D(A)$.

In the following propositions we use the notion of a regular, singular, critical point of an operator and a regular, singular values of operators. The reader finds these definitions in [32, P. 668] or [31, P. 184].

Also, we need a residual set. A subset of a topological space $Z$ is called residual iff it is a countable intersection of dense and open subsets of $Z$.

By the Baire theorem in any complete metric space or locally compact Hausdorff topological space, a residual set is dense in this space.

The most important theorem for nonlinear Fredholm mappings is due to S. Smale [24, P. 862] and Quinn [22]. It is also in [7, PP. 11-12].

Proposition 2.9 (a Smale-Quinn Theorem) If $F: X \rightarrow Y$ is a Fredholm mapping (possible nonlinear) of the class $C^{k}(X, Y)$ in the Frechét sense and either
(i) $X$ has a countable basis (S. Smale) or
(ii) $F$ is $\sigma$-proper (Quinn),
then the set $R_{F}$ of all regular values of $F$ is residual in $Y$. Moreover, if $F$ is proper, then $R_{F}$ is open and dense set in $Y$.

A necessary and sufficient condition for a local diffeomorphism (see [31, p. 171]) is given in the following proposition.

Proposition 2.10 (a Local Inverse Mapping Theorem, [31, p. 172]) Let $F: U\left(u_{0}\right) \subset$ $X \rightarrow Y$ be a $C^{1}$-mapping in the Frechét sense. Then $F$ is a local $C^{1}$-diffeomorphism at $u_{0}$ iff $u_{0}$ is a regular point of $F$.

Proposition 2.11 ([23, P. 89]) Let $\operatorname{dim} Y \geq 3$ and $F: X \rightarrow Y$ be a Fredholm mapping of the zero index. If $u_{0} \in X$ is an isolated singular point of $F$, then $F$ is locally invertible at $u_{0}$.

To illustrate the following results we shall need estimations of a Green $p \times p$-matrix for linear problem (1.1)-(1.3).

Lemma 2.1 Let the assumptions $(\mathrm{P}),(\mathrm{C}),\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha}\right)$ be satisfied for $\alpha \in(0,1)$. Then we have for the Green matrix $G$ of linear problem (1.1) -(1.3) with $f=0$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|D_{t}^{k_{0}} D_{x}^{k} G(t, x ; \tau, \xi)\right| \leq c(t-\tau)^{-\mu}\|x-\xi\|_{R^{n}}^{2 b \mu-\left(n+2 b k_{0}+|k|\right)} E \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $0 \leq 2 b k_{0}+|k| \leq 2 b$ and $\mu \leq\left(n+2 b k_{0}+|k|\right) / 2 b$, thereby $0 \leq \tau<t \leq T$ and $x, \xi \in c l \Omega, x \neq \xi$. The positive constant $c$ does not depend on $t, x, \tau, \xi$ and $E$ means the $p \times p$-matrix consisting only of units, $r=2 b /(2 b-1)$.

Proof Since $n+2 b k_{0}+|k|-2 b \mu \geq 0$ and $\|x-\xi\|_{R^{n}}<\operatorname{diam} \Omega$ so for $0<\delta \leq t-\tau \leq T$ we obtain (2.1) by the estimation (see [15, PP. 182-183])

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|D_{t}^{k_{0}} D_{x}^{k} G(t, x ; \tau, \xi)\right| \leq c_{1}(t-\tau)^{-\frac{n+2 b k_{0}+|k|}{2 b}} \exp \left\{-c_{2} \frac{\|x-\xi\|_{R^{n}}^{r}}{(t-\tau)^{1 /(2 b-1)}}\right\} \\
& \quad \leq c_{1}(t-\tau)^{-\mu}\|x-\xi\|_{R^{n}}^{2 b \mu-\left(n+2 b k_{0}+|k|\right)} \\
& \quad \times\left[\|x-\xi\|_{R^{n}}^{2 b} /(t-\tau)\right]^{\left(n+2 b k_{0}+|k|-2 b \mu\right) / 2 b} \exp \left\{-c_{2}\left[\|x-\xi\|_{R^{n}}^{2 b} /(t-\tau)\right]^{1 /(2 b-1)}\right\} E .
\end{aligned}
$$

If $0<t-\tau<\delta$ with respect to

$$
\lim _{y \rightarrow+\infty} y^{u} \exp \left\{-c y^{v}\right\}=0
$$

for every $u, v \in R$ and $c>0$, we get estimation (2.1).
Remark 2.2 For any $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in R^{n}$ the inequalities

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|x_{i}\right| \leq\|x\|_{R^{n}} \leq \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left|x_{i}\right| \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

hold, if $c_{n} \in\left(0,1 /(\sqrt{2})^{n-1}\right), n \in N$, does not depend of $x$.
Remark 2.3 Also, we see that the mild solution $u \in C_{x}^{|\gamma|}(c l Q, R)$ of problem (1.1)(1.3) satisfies the column vector integro-differential equation

$$
\begin{align*}
u(t, x) & =\int_{0}^{t} d \tau \int_{\Omega} G(t, x ; \tau, \xi)\left[g(\tau, \xi)-f\left(\tau, \xi, \bar{D}^{\gamma} u(\tau, \xi)\right)\right] d \xi=:  \tag{2.3}\\
& =(S u)(t, x) \quad \text { for } \quad(t, x) \in c l Q
\end{align*}
$$

for $0 \leq|\gamma| \leq 2 b-1$ and on the contrary the solution $v \in C_{x}^{|\gamma|}\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right)$ satisfying (2.3) is a mild solution of (1.1)-(1.3).

## 3 Operator Formulation and Fundamental Lemmas

Consider the following operators:
(i)

$$
\begin{equation*}
A: X \rightarrow Y \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
(A u)(t, x)=A\left(t, x, D_{t}, D_{x}\right) u(t, x)=D_{t} u(t, x)-\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b} a_{k}(t, x) D_{x}^{k} u(t, x)
$$

for $(t, x) \in \operatorname{cl} Q, u \in X$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
X= & \left\{u \in X_{\rho} ;\left.B_{j}\left(t, x, D_{x}\right) u\right|_{\Gamma}=0, \quad j=1,2, \ldots, b p,\right. \\
& u(0, x)=0 \quad \text { for } \quad x \in \operatorname{cl} Q\} \subset C\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Here

$$
X_{\rho} \subset C_{t, x}^{(2 b+\alpha) / 2 b, 2 b+\alpha}\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right)
$$

is the Banach space of continuous functions $u: c l Q \rightarrow R^{p}$ with the continuous derivatives $D_{x}^{k} u$ for $|k|=1, \ldots, 2 b$ and $D_{x}^{k_{0}} D_{x}^{k} u$ for $1 \leq 2 b k_{0}+|k| \leq 2 b$ on $c l Q$ and with the finite norm

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|u\|_{X_{\rho}}= & \max _{l=1, \ldots, p}\left[\sum_{0 \leq 2 b k_{0}+|k| \leq 2 b} \sup _{(t, x) \in c l Q}\left|D_{t}^{k_{0}} D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)\right|+\left\langle D_{t} u_{l}\right\rangle_{x, \alpha, Q}^{y}\right. \\
& +\sum_{|k|=2 b}\left\langle D_{x}^{k} u_{l}\right\rangle_{x, \alpha+\rho, Q}^{y}+\left\langle D_{t} u_{l}\right\rangle_{t, \alpha / 2 b, Q}^{s} \\
& \left.+\sum_{|k|=1}^{2 b-1}\left\langle D_{x}^{k} u_{l}\right\rangle_{t,(2 b+\alpha-|k|) / 2 b, Q}^{s}+\sum_{|k|=2 b}\left\langle D_{x}^{k} u_{l}\right\rangle_{t,(\alpha+\rho) / 2 b, Q}^{s}\right],
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\rho>0$ and $\alpha+\rho<1$. Further

$$
Y=T X \subset C_{t, x}^{\alpha / 2 b, \alpha}\left(c l Q, R^{p}\right)
$$

for $\alpha \in(0,1)$ with the norm

$$
\|u\|_{Y}=\max _{l=1, \ldots, p}\left[\sup _{(t, x) \in c l Q}\left|u_{l}(t, x)\right|+\left\langle u_{l}\right\rangle_{x, \alpha, Q}^{y}+\left\langle u_{l}\right\rangle_{t, \alpha / 2 b, Q}^{s}\right] .
$$

We understand

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \langle v\rangle_{t, \mu, Q}^{s}=\sup _{\substack{(t, x),(s, x) \in c l Q \\
t \neq s}} \frac{|v(t, x)-v(s, x)|}{|t-s|^{\mu}}, \\
& \langle v\rangle_{x, \mu, Q}^{y}=\sup _{\substack{(t, x),(t, y) \in c l Q \\
x \neq y}} \frac{|v(t, x)-v(t, y)|}{\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{\mu}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

for $v: c l Q \rightarrow R$.
(ii) The Nemitskǐ operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
N: X \rightarrow Y, \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
(N u)(t, x)=(f \circ u)(t, x)=f\left(t, x, \bar{D}_{x}^{\gamma} u(t, x)\right)
$$

for $(t, x) \in \operatorname{cl} Q, u \in X$.
(iii) The operator

$$
\begin{equation*}
F: X \rightarrow Y, \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
(F u)(t, x)=(A u)(t, x)+(N u)(t, x) \quad \text { for } \quad(t, x) \in c l Q, \quad u \in X .
$$

Together with the solution sets of given problem (1.1)-(1.3) we shall search for the bifurcation points sets.

Definition 3.1 (i) A couple $(u, g) \in X \times Y$ will be called the bifurcation point of (1.1)-(1.3) iff $u$ is a solution of this problem and there exists a sequence $\left\{g_{k}\right\}_{k \in N} \subset Y$ such that $\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} g_{k}=g$ in $Y$ and initial boundary value problem (1.1)-(1.3) with $g=g_{k}$ has at least two different solutions $u_{k}, v_{k}$ for each $k \in N$ and $\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} u_{k}=\lim _{k \rightarrow \infty} v_{k}=u$ in $X$.
(ii) The set of all solutions $u \in X$ of (1.1)-(1.3) (or the set of all functions $g \in$ $Y)$ such that $(u, g)$ is a bifurcation point of (1.1)-(1.3) will be called the domain of bifurcation (the bifurcation range) of (1.1)-(1.3).

Example 3.1 The point $\left(u_{r}, 0\right) \in X \times Y$ for $r \in\langle 0, T\rangle$ is a bifurcation point of the Neumann problem (parabolic and non-parabolic)

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} & = \pm \frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial x^{2}}+f(t, x, u), & & (t, x) \in(0, T\rangle \times \Omega=Q \subset R^{2},  \tag{*}\\
\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}(t, 0) & =\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}(t, 1)=0, & & t \in\langle 0, T\rangle,  \tag{*}\\
u(0, x) & =0, & & x \in \bar{\Omega} \tag{*}
\end{align*}
$$

for $f(t, x, u)=|u|^{1 / 2}-a u, a>0$. Here for $r \in(0, T)$

$$
u_{r}(t, x)= \begin{cases}0, & \text { if } \quad(t, x) \in\langle 0, r\rangle \times \bar{\Omega} \\ \frac{1}{\alpha^{2}}\left(1-\exp \left\{-\frac{a}{2}(t-r)\right\}\right)^{2}, & \text { if } \quad(t, x) \in(r, T\rangle \times \bar{\Omega}\end{cases}
$$

The functions $u_{0}(t, x)=\frac{1}{\alpha^{2}}(1-\exp \{-a t / 2\})^{2}, u_{T}(t, x)=0$ are solutions of the given problem, too.

Really, there is the zero sequence $\left\{g_{k}\right\}_{k \in N}$ of the right hand side of (1.1) for which there exist two different sequences of solutions

$$
\left\{u_{k}\right\}_{k \in N}=\left\{u_{\frac{r(k+1)}{}}^{k+2}\right\}_{k \in N} \quad \text { and } \quad\left\{v_{k}\right\}_{k \in N}=\left\{v_{\frac{r_{k}}{} v}^{k+1} v\right\}_{k \in N}
$$

with the same limit $u_{r} \in X$.
The following equivalence result is true.
Lemma 3.1 (i) The function $u \in X$ is a solution of initial boundary-value problem (1.1) - (1.3) for $g \in Y$ iff $F u=g$.
(ii) The couple $(u, g) \in X \times Y$ is a bifurcation point of (1.1)-(1.3) iff $F u=g$ and $u$ is a point at which $F$ is not locally invertible, i.e. $u \in \Sigma$.

Proof The first assertion is clear.
If $(u, g)$ is a bifurcation point of $(1.1)-(1.3)$, then with respect to Definition 3.1 we get $F(u)=g, F\left(u_{k}\right)=g_{k}=F\left(v_{k}\right), u_{k} \neq v_{k}$. Thus $F$ is not locally injective at $u$. Hence, $F$ is not locally invertible at $u$, i.e. $u \in \Sigma$. On the contrary, if $F$ is not locally invertible at $u$ and $F(u)=g$, then $F$ is not locally injective at $u$. Hence, it follows that the couple $(u, g) \in X \times Y$ is a bifurcation point of (1.1)-(1.3). The second assertion is proved.

The following lemma gives sufficient conditions under which the operator $A$ is a Fredholm type.

Assumption A. 1 There exists a linear homeomorphism $H: X \rightarrow Y$ with

$$
H u=D_{t} u-H\left(t, x, D_{x}\right) u, \quad u \in X,
$$

where

$$
H\left(t, x, D_{x}\right) u=\sum_{|k|=2 b} h_{k}(t, x) D_{x}^{k} u+\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b-1} h_{k}(t, x) D_{x}^{k} u
$$

satisfies $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right)$ for $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$.
Lemma 3.2 Let the operator A from (3.1) satisfy the smoothness hypothesis $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right)$, $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$ (it has not to satisfy the conditions (P), (C), (Q)). Further let Assumption A. 1 hold.

Then
(i) $\operatorname{dim} X=+\infty$;
(ii) the operator $A: X \rightarrow Y$ is a linear bounded Fredholm operator of the zero index.

Proof (i) The equation

$$
\operatorname{dim} C_{0}^{\infty}(Q, R)=+\infty
$$

and the inclusion

$$
C_{0}^{\infty}(Q, R) \subset X
$$

imply $\operatorname{dim} X=+\infty$.
(ii) Since the coefficients $a_{k}$ for $0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b$ are continuous on the compact set $\operatorname{cl} Q$, there is a positive constant $K>0$ such that

$$
\|A u\|_{Y} \leq K\left(\left\|D_{t} u\right\|_{Y}+\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b}\left\|D_{x}^{k} u\right\|_{Y}\right)=K\|u\|_{X}
$$

for all $u \in X$, whence the operator $A$ is bounded on $X$.
If the operator $A$ is a homeomorphism, then statement (ii) is clear.
If $A$ is not the homeomorphism, then by the Nikoľskiǐ decomposition theorem from Proposition 2.1, it is sufficient to show that

$$
A u=H u+\left(H\left(t, x, D_{x}\right)-A\left(t, x, D_{x}\right)\right) u=H u+T u,
$$

thereby the mapping $T: X \rightarrow Y$ is the linear completely continuous operator. It will be proved by generalized Ascoli- Arzelà theorem from [21, P. 31].

From the hypothesis ( $\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}$ ), the equi-boundedness of

$$
T u=\sum_{|k|=2 b}\left(h_{k}(t, x)-a_{k}(t, x)\right) D_{x}^{k} u+\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b-1}\left(h_{k}(t, x)-a_{k}(t, x)\right) D_{x}^{k} u
$$

holds at the bounded set $S \subset X$, i.e. there is a constant $K_{1}(n, \alpha, T, \Omega)>0$ such that $\|T u\|_{Y} \leq K_{1}\|u\|_{X}$ for all $u \in S$.

Now for the equi-continuity of the set $T S \subset Y$ we have to prove the inequality (for every element $u_{l}, l=1, \ldots, p$, of $\left.u=\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{p}\right)\right)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|(T u)_{l}(t, x)-(T u)_{l}(s, y)\right| & +\frac{\left|(T u)_{l}(t, x)-(T u)_{l}(t, y)\right|}{\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{\alpha}} \\
& +\frac{\left|(T u)_{l}(t, x)-(T u)_{l}(s, x)\right|}{|t-s|^{\alpha / 2 b}}<\varepsilon
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $u \in S$ and $(t, x),(s, y),(t, y),(s, x) \in c l Q, x \neq y, t \neq s$ for which the norms $\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}$ and $|t-s|$ are sufficiently small, $\varepsilon>0$.

With respect to ( $\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}$ ) we obtain for the first member of the previous inequality

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mid(T u)_{l}(t, x)- & (T u)_{l}(s, y) \mid \\
\leq & \sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b}\left|\left(h_{k}-a_{k}\right)(t, x)-\left(h_{k}-a_{k}\right)(s, y)\right|\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)\right| \\
& +\sum_{|k|=2 b}\left|h_{k}(s, y)-a_{k}(s, y)\right|\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(s, y)\right| \\
& +\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b-1}\left|h_{k}(s, y)-a_{k}(s, y)\right|\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(s, y)\right| \\
\leq & K_{2} \sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b}\left|\left(h_{k}-a_{k}\right)(t, x)-\left(h_{k}-a_{k}\right)(s, y)\right| \\
& +K_{3} \sum_{|k|=2 b}\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(s, y)\right| \\
& +K_{3} \sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b-1} \mid D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(s, y \mid
\end{aligned}
$$

where $K_{2}, K_{3}$ are positive constants dependent only on $n, \alpha, T, \Omega$. For $|t-s|<\delta$, $\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}<\delta$ with a sufficiently small $\delta>0$ the every member of the last inequality is smaller than fixed arbitrary $\varepsilon>0$. (Since $u \in S \subset X$, the number $\delta$ does not depend on $u$.)

For the second member we get by the condition ( $\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}$ ) and using the mean value theorem

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mid(T u)_{l}(t, x)- & (T u)_{l}(t, y) \mid\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{-\alpha} e \\
\leq & K_{2} \sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b}\left|\left(h_{k}-a_{k}\right)(t, x)-\left(h_{k}-a_{k}\right)(t, y)\right|\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{-\alpha} \\
& +K_{3} \sum_{|k|=2 b}\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, y)\right|\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{-\alpha} \\
& +K_{3} \sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b-1}\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, y)\right|\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{-\alpha} \\
\leq & K\left(2\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{\rho}+\|x-y\|^{1-\alpha}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

By the similar way we have for the third member

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mid(T u)_{l}(t, x)- & (T u)_{l}(s, x)|\cdot| t-\left.s\right|^{-\alpha / 2 b} \\
\leq & K_{2} \sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b}\left|\left(h_{k}-a_{k}\right)(t, x)-\left(h_{k}-a_{k}\right)(s, x)\right||t-s|^{-\alpha / 2 b} \\
& +K_{3} \sum_{|k|=2 b}\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(s, x)\right||t-s|^{-\alpha / 2 b} \\
& +K_{3} \sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b-1}\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(s, x)\right||t-s|^{-\alpha / 2 b}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\leq K\left(2|t-s|^{\rho / 2 b}+|t-s|^{1-\alpha / 2 b}+\sum_{|k|=1}^{2 b-1}|t-s|^{1-|k| / 2 b}\right)
$$

By these three estimations the assertion (ii) is proved.
Remark 3.1 Necessary and sufficient conditions for the existence of a linear homeomorphism $H: X \rightarrow Y$ from the assumption (A.1) are given in Proposition 1.1. Concretely, for example, $H u=\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}-\Delta u, u \in X$.

Corollary 3.1 Let $\mathcal{L}$ mean the set of all linear differential operators $A=D_{t}-$ $A\left(t, x, D_{x}\right): X \rightarrow Y$ satisfying the hypothesis $\left(S^{\alpha+\rho}\right), \alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$. Then for each $A \in \mathcal{L}$ the initial boundary-value homogeneous problem $A u=0$, (1.2), (1.3) has a nontrivial solution or any $A \in \mathcal{L}$ is a linear bounded Fredholm operator of the zero index.

Proof Really, if there exists an operator $A \in \mathcal{L}$ such that the problem $A u=0,(1.2)$, (1.3) has only trivial solution, then $A$ is homeomorphism $X$ onto $Y$ (see Proposition 1.1). Then by Lemma 3.2 all operators of $\mathcal{L}$ are Fredholm of the zero index.

Assumption N. 1 The vector function $f \in C\left(c l Q \times R^{\kappa}, R^{p}\right)$ satisfies the following local grown vector condition

$$
\left|f\left(t, x, u^{\gamma}\right)-f\left(s, y, v^{\gamma}\right)\right| \leq L\left[|t-s|^{\beta_{1}}+\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{\beta_{2}}+\sum_{l=1}^{p} \sum_{0 \leq|\gamma| \leq 2 b-1}\left|u_{l}^{\gamma}-v_{l}^{\gamma}\right|^{\beta_{\gamma, l}}\right] J
$$

for $\left(t, x, u^{\gamma}\right),\left(s, y, v^{\gamma}\right)$ from a compact subset of $R^{\kappa}$ and $\beta_{1}>\alpha / 2 b, \beta_{2}>\alpha, \beta_{\gamma, l}>$ $\alpha /(\alpha+\rho), 0 \leq|\gamma| \leq 2 b-1, l=1, \ldots, p$, where $L>0$.

Lemma 3.3 Suppose Assumption N. 1 holds. Then the Nemitskǐ operator $N: X \rightarrow Y$ from (3.2) is completely continuous on $X$.

Proof For any bounded set $S \subset X$ the $N$ is equi-bounded in $Y$. Indeed, for all $u \in S$ using (N.1) the norm

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|N u\|_{Y} & \leq \max _{l=1, \ldots, p}\left[\sup _{(t, x) \in c l Q}\left|f_{l}\left(t, x, \bar{D}_{x}^{\gamma} u(t, x)\right)\right|\right. \\
& +L \sup _{\substack{(t, x),(t, y) \in c l Q \\
x \neq y}} \frac{\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{\beta_{2}}+\sum_{l=1}^{p} \sum_{0 \leq|\gamma| \leq 2 b-1}\left|D_{x}^{\gamma} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{\gamma} u_{l}(t, y)\right|^{\beta_{\gamma, l}}}{\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{\alpha}} \\
& \left.+\sup _{\substack{(t, x),(s, x) \in c l Q \\
t \neq s}} \frac{|t-s|^{\beta_{1}}+\sum_{l=1}^{p} \sum_{0 \leq|\gamma| \leq 2 b-1}\left|D_{x}^{\gamma} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{\gamma} u_{l}(s, x)\right|^{\beta_{\gamma, l}}}{|t-s|^{\alpha / 2 b}}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, it is bounded by a positive constant $K\left(\Omega, T, L, \alpha, \beta_{1}, \beta_{2}, \beta_{\gamma, l}\right)$.

Also, for $|t-s|^{2}+\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{2}<\delta^{2}$ with a sufficiently small $\delta>0$ we get the equicontinuity of $N$. It is sufficient to prove that for every $\varepsilon>0$ there exists $\delta>0$ such that the inequality

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mid(N u)_{l}(t, x) & -(N u)_{l}(s, y) \mid \\
& +\frac{\left|(N u)_{l}(t, x)-(N u)_{l}(t, y)\right|}{\|x-y\|_{R^{n}}^{\alpha}}+\frac{\left|(N u)_{l}(t, x)-(N u)_{l}(s, x)\right|}{|t-s|^{\alpha / 2 b}}<\varepsilon
\end{aligned}
$$

is true for all $u \in S$, if both $t, s$ and $x, y$ to be sufficiently near and $l=1, \ldots, p$.
Assumption F. 1 For each bounded set $S \subset Y$ there is a constant $K^{a}>0$ such that for all solutions $u \in X$ of (1.1)-(1.3) with $g \in S$ the inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|u\|_{a, Q}=\max _{l=1, \ldots, p} \sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq a} \sup _{(t, x) \in c l Q}\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)\right| \leq K^{a} \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

holds for $a=\max \{|\gamma|, r\}$. Here $r$ is an integer $0 \leq r \leq 2 b-1$ for which the coefficients of operators $A$ and $H$ from (3.1) and (A.1), respectively satisfy the relations $a_{k}=h_{k}$ for $|k|=r+1, \ldots, 2 b$ and $a_{k} \neq h_{k}$ for at least one multiindex $k$ with $|k|=r$ on $\operatorname{cl} Q$.

Lemma 3.4 Let ( $S^{\alpha+\rho}, \alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho>1$ ), (A.1), (N.1) and an almost coercivity condition of Assumption F. 1 be satisfied. Then
(i) $F$ from (3.3) is coercive at $X$.
(ii) $F$ is proper and continuous at $X$.

Proof (i) We need to prove that if the set $S \subset Y$ is bounded in $Y$, then the set of arguments $F^{-1}(S) \subset X$ is bounded in $X$.

By (3.4) and the Assumption F. 1 it follows that the set $F^{-1}(S)$ is bounded in the norm $\|\cdot\|_{a, Q}$. Hence and by Assumption N. 1 one obtains the estimation $\|N u\|_{Y} \leq K_{4}$ for all $u \in F^{-1}(S)$. From Lemma 3.2 (ii) also $\|A u\|_{Y} \leq\|F u\|_{Y}+\|N u\|_{Y} \leq K_{5}$ for any $u \in F^{-1}(S)$, where $K_{4}, K_{5}$ are positive constants.

On the other hand, Assumption A. 1 ensures the existence and uniqueness of the solution $u \in X$ of the linear equation $H u=y$ for any $y \in Y$ and (see the Green representation of solution from (2.3) and [15, PP. 182-183] and estimation (2.1)) the estimation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|u\|_{X} \leq K_{6}\|y\|_{Y}, \quad K_{6}>0,: u \in F^{-1}(S) \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

is true.
Then for $u \in F^{-1}(S)$ we have

$$
H u=A u+\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b}\left(a_{k}(t, x)-h_{k}(t, x)\right) D_{x}^{k} u .
$$

With respect to ( $\mathrm{S}^{\alpha}$ ) and Assumption F. 1

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \|y\|_{Y}=\|H u\|_{Y} \leq\|A u\|_{Y}+\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq r}\left\|a_{k}-h_{k}\right\|_{Y}\left\|D_{x}^{k} u\right\|_{Y} \leq \\
& K_{5}+K_{7}\|u\|_{r, Q} \leq K_{5}+K_{7}\|u\|_{a, Q} \leq K_{5}+K_{7} K^{a}, \quad K_{7}>0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence and by (3.5)

$$
\|u\|_{X} \leq K_{6}\left(K_{5}+K_{7} K^{a}\right), \quad u \in F^{-1}(S)
$$

(ii) Since $\operatorname{dim} X=+\infty$ and $A$ is a nonconstant and closed mapping on $X$, then by Proposition 2.4 (ii) it is proper on $X$. From Lemma 3.3 the operator $N$ is completely continuous on $X$. From (i) of this lemma $F$ is coercive on $X$. The Proposition 2.5 (ii) concludes the proof of (ii) and the proof of Lemma 3.4.

In the following lemmas we shall consider the continuous nonlinearity $f$. Conditions for the continuous F-differentiability of the Nemitskiĭ operator $N$ give the following lemma.

Assumption N. 2 For $l=1, \ldots, p$ and the multiindices $\beta$ with the modulus $0 \leq$ $|\beta| \leq 2 b-1$,

$$
\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\beta, l}} \in C\left(c l Q \times R^{\kappa}, R^{p}\right)
$$

where $\kappa$ represents the number of all components in the vector function $\bar{D}_{x}^{\beta} u$ from (1.1).
Lemma 3.5 Let the Nemitskiŭ operator $N: X \rightarrow Y$ satisfy Assumptions N. 1 and N.2. Then
(i) the operator $N$ is continuously Frechét differentiable on $X$, i.e. $N \in C^{1}(X, Y)$;
(ii) if moreover $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right)$ for $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$ holds, then $F \in C^{1}(X, Y)$.

Proof (i) We need to prove that Frechét derivative $N^{\prime}: X \rightarrow L(X, Y)$ defined by the vector equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
N^{\prime}(u) h(t, x)=\sum_{\substack{0 \leq|\beta| \leq 2 b-1 \\ \operatorname{card}\{\mathcal{\beta}, l\}=\kappa \\ l=1, \ldots, p}} \frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\beta}}\left[t, x, \bar{D}_{x}^{\gamma} u(t, x)\right] D_{x}^{\beta} h_{l}(t, x) \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

is continuous on $X$ for every $u, h \in X$. Here $\beta=\left(\beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{n}\right)$ represents every multiindex $\gamma=\left(\gamma_{1}, \ldots, \gamma_{n}\right)$ appearing in the nonlinearity $f$. It is sufficient to show for every fixed $v \in X$ the implication:

$$
\forall \varepsilon>0 \quad \exists \delta(\varepsilon, v)>0 \quad \forall u \in X, \quad\|u-v\|_{X}<\delta \Rightarrow\left\|N^{\prime} u-N^{\prime} v\right\|_{L(X, Y)}<\varepsilon
$$

i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sup _{h \in X,\|h\|_{X} \leq 1}\left\|N^{\prime}(u) h-N^{\prime}(v) h\right\|_{Y}<\varepsilon \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us take an arbitrary $\varepsilon>0$ and $u \in X$ such that $\|u-v\|_{X}<\delta$, i.e. $\mid D_{t} u_{l}(t, x)-$ $D_{t} v_{l}(t, x) \mid<\delta$ and $\left|D_{x}^{k} u_{l}(t, x)-D_{x}^{k} v_{l}(t, x)\right|<\delta$ for all multiindices $0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b$ on $c l Q$. Hence with respect to the uniform continuity of $\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\beta, l}}$ for $0 \leq|\beta| \leq 2 b-1, l=1, \ldots, p$, on every compact of $\mathrm{cl} Q \times R^{\kappa}$ we get the vector inequality

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|N^{\prime}(u) h(t, x)-N^{\prime}(v) h(t, x)\right| \\
& \quad \leq \sum_{\substack{0 \leq|\beta| \leq 2 b-1 \\
\text { card }\{\beta\}=\kappa \\
l=1, \ldots, p}}\left|\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\beta, l}}\left[t, x, \bar{D}_{x}^{\gamma} u(t, x)\right]-\frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\beta, l}}\left[t, x, \bar{D}_{x}^{\gamma} v(t, x)\right]\right|\left|D_{x}^{\beta} h_{l}(t, x)\right|<\varepsilon J
\end{aligned}
$$

for $\|h\|_{X} \leq 1$ and all $(t, x) \in \operatorname{cl} Q$. It finishes the proof of (3.7).
(ii) We easily see that Fréchet derivative $F^{\prime}: X \rightarrow L(X, Y)$ is defined by the vector equation

$$
F^{\prime}(u) h(t, x)=D_{t} h(t, x)-\sum_{0 \leq|k| \leq 2 b} a_{k}(t, x) D_{x}^{k} h(t, x)+N^{\prime}(u) h(t, x)
$$

for $u, h \in X$. Hence and by (i) we get $F \in C^{1}(X, Y)$.
Lemma 3.6 Let the hypotheses $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right), \alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$, (A.1), (N.1) and (N.Q) be satisfied. Then $F=A+N: X \rightarrow Y$ is a nonlinear Fredholm operator of the zero index on $X$.

Proof According to Lemma 3.2 the operator $A: X \rightarrow Y$ is a linear continuous and $C^{1}-$ Fredholm mapping of the zero index. By the statement of Lemma 3.3 the operator $N: X \rightarrow Y$ is compact. By Lemma 3.5 it belongs to the class $C^{1}$. Then Proposition 2.8 implies that $F$ is a nonlinear Fredholm operator with the zero index.

## 4 The Solution Set for Continuous Nonlinearities

The first results for that proper mapping $F$ give the following theorem.
Theorem 4.1 Let hypotheses $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right)$ for $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$, and Assumptions A.1, N. 1 hold. Then
(a) for any compact set of the right hand sides $g \in Y$ of (1.1) the corresponding set of all solutions of (1.1)-(1.3) is a countable union of compact sets;
(b) for $u_{0} \in X$ there exists a neighborhood $U\left(u_{0}\right)$ of $u_{0}$ and $U\left(F\left(u_{0}\right)\right)$ of $F\left(u_{0}\right) \in Y$ such that for each $g \in U\left(F\left(u_{0}\right)\right)$ there is an unique solution of (1.1)-(1.3) iff the operator $F$ is locally injective at $u_{0}$;
(c) let moreover (F.1) hold. Then for any compact set of the right hand sides $g \in Y$ from (1.1), the set of all solutions of (1.1)-(1.3) is compact (possible empty).

Proof (a) Since $F=A+N$ (see (3.3)) by the decomposition of $A=C+T$ (Proposition 2.1) we have $F=C+(T+N)$, where $C$ is a continuous and proper mapping $X$ onto $Y$ (see Proposition 2.4), $A$ is a Fredholm operator of the zero index, $T$ and $N$ are completely continuous mappings. Since $X$ is a countable union of closed balls in $X$, so with respect to Proposition 2.5 (i) the operator $F$ is $\sigma$-proper (continuous). Lemma 3.1 (i) implies assertion (a).
(b) Suppose that $F$ is injective in a neighborhood $U\left(u_{0}\right)$ of $u_{0} \in X$. From the decomposition (for $H$ see Lemma 3.2)

$$
F=H+(T+N)
$$

we obtain $H^{-1} F=I+H^{-1}(T+N)$ which is a completely continuous and injective perturbation of the identity $I: X \rightarrow Y$ in $U\left(u_{0}\right)$. According to Proposition 2.7 (i) the set $H^{-1} F\left(U\left(u_{0}\right)\right)$ is open in $X$ and the restriction $\left.H^{-1} F\right|_{U\left(u_{0}\right)}$ is a homeomorphism of $U\left(u_{0}\right)$ onto $H^{-1} F\left(U\left(u_{0}\right)\right)$. Therefore $F$ is locally invertible at $u_{0}$. Again by Lemma 3.1 (i) we obtain (b).
(c) By Lemma 3.4 (ii) the operator $F: X \rightarrow Y$ is proper which implies the given assertion and includes the proof of Theorem 4.1.

We have the following theorem on further qualitative and quantitative properties of the set solutions of (1.1)-(1.3).

Proof First of all we see that conditions (k) and (l) are mutually equivalent to the conditions
$\left(\mathrm{k}^{\prime}\right) F\left(D_{b}\right) \subset F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right)$ and
$\left(l^{\prime}\right) Y \backslash R_{b}$ is a connected set and $F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right) \backslash R_{b} \neq \varnothing$, respectively.

From the proof of Theorem 4.2 (f) we have $D_{b}=\Sigma$.
(k) From (k') we have $F(X)=F\left(D_{b}\right) \cup F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right)=F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right)$. So $R(F)=F(X)$ is closed and connected in $Y$ (Theorem 4.2 (e)) as well as open set in $Y$ (see Theorem 4.2 (f)). Thus $R(F)=Y$ which implies the surjectivity of $F$.
(l) By (h) of Theorem 4.2, card $F^{-1}(\{g\})$ is a constant $k \geq 0$ for every $g$ from the same component of $Y \backslash R_{b}$.

If $k=0$ for all $g \in Y \backslash R_{b}$ such that $F(X)=R_{b}$, whence $F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right) \subset R_{b}$. It is a contradiction with ( $1^{\prime}$ ).

Assumptions S. 1 There exists a constant $K^{a}>0$ such that all solutions $u \in X$ of the initial boundary-value problem for the equation

$$
H u+\mu(A u-H u+N u)=0, \quad \mu \in(0,1)
$$

with data (1.2), (1.3) fulfil inequality (3.4) from Lemma 3.4. $H$ is the linear homeomorphism from Assumption A.1.

Theorem 4.4 Let $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right)$ with $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$, and Assumptions A.1, N. 1 and F. 1 hold together with the hypothesis S.1.

Then
(m) problem (1.1)-(1.3) has at least one solution for each $g \in Y$;
(n) the number $n_{g}$ of solutions (1.1)-(1.3) is finite, constant and different from zero on each component of the set $Y \backslash R_{b}$ (for all $g$ belonging to the same component of $\left.Y \backslash R_{b}\right)$.

Proof (m) It is sufficient to prove the surjectivity of $F: X \rightarrow Y$. By Lemma 3.2 (see the proof of (ii)) we can write

$$
F=A+N=H+(T+N)
$$

The mapping

$$
H^{-1} F=I+H^{-1}(T+N): X \rightarrow X
$$

is a completely continuous and condensing field (see [31, P. 496]).
Let $S \subset X$ be a bounded set. Then $H(S)$ is a bounded set in $Y$. From the coercivity of $F$ (see Lemma 3.4 (i)) the set $F^{-1}[H(S)]=\left(H^{-1} F\right)^{-1}(S)$ is bounded at $X$. Hence $H^{-1} F$ is coercive.

Now we show that condition (iii) from Proposition 2.6 is satisfied for the condensing and coercive field $P=H^{-1} F$. Take the strictly solvable field $G(u)=u$. Then the equation $P(u)=k G(u)$ implies

$$
\left(H^{-1} F\right)(u)=k u .
$$

Hence we get for $u \in X$ and $k<0$

$$
H u+(1-k)^{-1}[A u-H u+N u]=0
$$

Theorem 4.2 Let hypotheses ( $\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}$ ) with $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$, and Assumptions A.1, N. 1 and F. 1 be satisfied. For solutions of (1.1)-(1.3) the following statements are true:
(d) the set of solution for each $g \in Y$ is compact (possible empty);
(e) the set $R(F)=g \in Y$ such that there exists at least one solution $u \in X$ of (1.1)-(1.3) is closed and connected in $Y$;
(f) the domain of bifurcation $D_{b}$ is closed in $X$ and the bifurcation range $R_{b}$ is closed in $Y$. The set $F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right)$ is open in $Y$;
(g) if $Y \backslash R_{b} \neq \varnothing$, then each component of $Y \backslash R_{b}$ is a nonempty open set (i.e. domain);
(h) if $Y \backslash R_{b} \neq \varnothing$, the number $n_{g}$ of solutions is finite and constant (it may be zero) on each component of $Y \backslash R_{b}$, i.e. $n_{g}$ is the same nonnegative integer for each $g$ belonging to the same component of $Y \backslash R_{b}$;
(i) if $R_{b}=\varnothing$, then the given problem has a unique solution $u \in X$ for each $g \in Y$ and this solution continuously depends on $g$ as a mapping from $Y$ onto $X$;
(j) if $R_{b} \neq \varnothing$, then the boundary $\partial F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right)$ is a subset of $F\left(D_{b}\right)=R_{b}$ $\left(\partial F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right) \subset F\left(D_{b}\right)\right)$.

Proof The assertion (d) follows directly from Theorem 4.1 (c).
(e) Take the sequence $\left\{g_{n}\right\}_{n \in N} \subset R(F) \subset Y$ converging to $g \in Y$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. By (d) there is a compact set of all solutions $\left\{u_{\gamma}\right\}_{\gamma \in I} \subset X$ (here $I$ means an index set) of the equations $F(u)=g_{n}$ for $n=1,2, \ldots$. Thus there exists a subsequence $\left\{u_{n_{k}}\right\}_{k \in N} \subset\left\{u_{\gamma}\right\}_{\gamma \in I}$ converging to $u \in X$ and $F\left(u_{n_{k}}\right)=g_{n_{k}} \rightarrow g$ in $Y$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Since the mapping $F$ is proper (Lemma 3.4 (ii)) by Proposition 2.4 (i) it is closed, whence $F(u)=g$, i.e. $g \in R(F)$. The set $R(F)$ is closed. $R(F)=F(X)$ is connected as a continuous image of the connected set $X$.
(f) According to Lemma 3.1 (ii) $D_{b}=\Sigma$ and $R_{b}=F\left(D_{b}\right)=F(\Sigma)$. Since $X \backslash \Sigma$ is an open set then $D_{b}$ is closed in $X$ and its continuous image $R_{b}$ is a closed set in $Y$.

Since, $X \backslash D_{b}=X \backslash \Sigma$ is the set of all points at which the mapping $F$ is locally invertible, to each $u_{0} \in X \backslash D_{b}$ there is a neighborhood $U_{1}\left(F\left(u_{0}\right)\right) \subset F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right)$. It means, the set $F\left(X \backslash D_{b}\right)$ is open.
(g) The set $Y \backslash R_{b}=Y \backslash F\left(D_{b}\right) \neq \varnothing$ is open in $Y$. Then each its component is nonempty and open, too.
(h) This directly follows from Proposition 2.2.
(i) By $R_{b}=\varnothing$ is $D_{b}=\varnothing$ and the mapping $F$ is locally invertible in $X$. Proposition 2.5 (ii) asserts that $F$ is a proper mapping. Then from the global inverse mapping theorem (Proposition 2.3) implies $F$ is homeomorphism $X$ onto $Y$.
(j) From Lemma 3.1 (ii) $D_{b}=\Sigma$ and by (f) $D_{b}$ and $F\left(D_{b}\right)$ are closed. Then $\partial F(X \backslash$ $\left.D_{b}\right)=\partial F\left(D_{b}\right) \subset F\left(D_{b}\right)$.

This finishes the proof of the theorem.
The following two theorems are on the surjectivity of (1.1)-(1.3).
Theorem 4.3 Under the assumptions $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right), \alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$, and Assumptions A.1, N. 1 and F. 1 each of the following conditions is sufficient for the solvability of problem (1.1)-(1.3) for each $g \in Y$ :
(k) for each $g \in R_{b}$ there is a solution $u \in X \backslash D_{b}$ of (1.1) - (1.3);
(1) the set $Y \backslash R_{b}$ is connected and there is $g \in R(F) \backslash R_{b}$ (for $R(F)$ see Theorem $4.2(e))$.
where $(1-k)^{-1} \in(0,1)$. With respect to Assumption S. 1

$$
\|u\|_{a, Q} \leq K^{a}
$$

for $a=\max \{|\gamma|, r\}$, where $|\gamma|=0,1, \ldots, 2 b-1$ and $0 \leq r \leq 2 b-1$ are fixed. Using the same method as in Lemma 3.4 (i) we obtain for all solutions of

$$
\left(H^{-1} F\right) u=k u
$$

the estimation $\|u\|_{X} \leq K_{8}, K_{8}>0$. By Proposition 2.6 we have the strict surjectivity of $H^{-1} F$ and so $F$. This proves (m).
(n) From the surjectivity of $F$ on $X$ it follows $n_{g} \neq 0$. The other assertions of (n) follow from Theorem 4.2 (h).

Example 4.1 The simple example illustrating results of this part can be the initial boundary-value problem for the system of $p$ equations.

$$
\frac{\partial u_{l}}{\partial t}-K_{l} \frac{\partial^{2} u_{l}}{\partial x^{2}}+f_{l}(u)=0, \quad(t, x) \in\langle 0, T\rangle \times \Omega \subset R \times R,
$$

where $l=1, \ldots, p$ with the conditions

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{\partial u_{l}}{\partial x}(t, 0)=\frac{\partial u_{l}}{\partial x}(t, 1)=0, \quad t \in\langle 0, T\rangle, \\
u_{l}(0, x)=0, x \in c l \Omega
\end{gathered}
$$

We take $K_{l}>0$ and

$$
f_{l}(u)= \begin{cases}u_{l}^{1 / 2}, & \text { if } \quad u_{l} \in\langle 0, a\rangle, \\ a^{1 / 2}, & \text { if } u_{l} \in\langle a, \infty), \\ 0, & \text { if } \quad u_{l} \leq 0,\end{cases}
$$

for $l=1, \ldots, p$. Assumption A. 1 is satisfied by Proposition 1.1. The condition N. 1 can be verified by elementary calculus. The supposition F. 1 follows from equation (2.3) and Green matrix estimations (2.1). The condition ( $\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}$ ) holds for $0<\alpha<1 / 2$, $1 / 2<\rho<1$ and $\alpha+\rho<1$ (for example $\alpha=1 / 5, \rho=3 / 5$ ).

## 5 The Solution Set for $C^{1}$-nonlinearities

With respect to the $C^{1}$-, differentiability of the operator $N$ from (3.2) we prove here several stronger results than in Chapter 4 for the solutions of (1.1)-(1.3).

Theorem 5.1 Suppose that $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right)$ for $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$ and Assumptions A.1, N.1, N. 2 and F. 1 are satisfied and $R_{b}$ means the bifurcation range of (1.1)-(1.3) from Definition 3.1. Then the set $Y \backslash R_{b}$ is open and dense in $Y$ and thus the bifurcation range $R_{b}$ of initial boundary-value problem (1.1)-(1.3) is nowhere dense in $Y$.

Proof The openness of $Y \backslash R_{b}$ follows from the statement (f) of Theorem 4.2.

From previous lemmas the operator $A: X \rightarrow Y$ is a linear continuous Fredholm mapping of the zero index and the Nemitskiì operator $N: X \rightarrow Y$ is compact and $N \in$ $C^{1}(X, Y)$.

For every $u \in X$ the linear operator $N^{\prime}: X \rightarrow Y$ from (3.6) is completely continuous on $X$. By the Nikoľskiǐ decomposition theorem (see Proposition 2.1) the operator $F^{\prime}(u)=A+N^{\prime}(u): X \rightarrow Y$ is a linear Fredholm mapping of the zero index for each $u \in X$. By Lemma 3.5 (ii) there is $F \in C^{1}(X, Y)$ and by Lemma 3.6 the $F$ is a nonlinear Fredholm operator of the zero index.

According to the Banach open mapping theorem (see [30, P. 77]) the mutual equivalence is true: $F^{\prime}(u)$ is a linear homeomorphism iff it is a bijective mapping. Since $F^{\prime}(u)$ for every $u \in X$ is a linear Fredholm mapping of the zero index so $F^{\prime}(u)$ is bijective iff it is injective (in this case the injectivity implies surjectivity, see Proposition 8.14 (1) from [31, P. 366]). We see that $u \in X$ is a singular point of the Fredholm operator $F$ iff $u$ is a critical point of $F$.

From Proposition 2.10 we obtain that set $\Sigma$ (of all points $u \in X$ for which $F$ is not locally invertible) is a subset of all critical point $F$. Then, evidently $\Sigma$ is a subset of all singular points $S$ of $F$, i.e. $\Sigma \subset S$. Hence we get for the set of regular values $R_{F}$ of the operator $F$ the relations

$$
R_{F}=Y \backslash F(S) \subset Y \backslash F(\Sigma) \subset Y \backslash R_{b} \subset Y
$$

where $R_{b} \subset F(\Sigma)$ is a bifurcation range of $F$.
Since $F: X \rightarrow Y$ is nonconstant closed mapping with $\operatorname{dim} X=\infty$, by Proposition 2.4 we obtain that $F$ is a proper mapping. By Proposition 2.9 (the Quinn version) the set $R_{F}$ is residual, open and dense in $Y$. Hence $Y \backslash R_{b}$ is dense in $Y$, too. With respect to Lemma 3.1 (ii) we can conclude the proof.

In the following results we shall deal with the linear problem in $h \in X$

$$
\begin{equation*}
A h(t, x)+\sum_{\substack{0 \leq \mid \beta \backslash \leq 2 b-1 \\ \operatorname{card}\{|\beta|\}=\kappa}} \frac{\partial f}{\partial v_{\beta}}\left[t, x, D_{x}^{\gamma} u(t, x)\right] D_{x}^{\beta} h(t, x)=g(t, x) \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $(t, x) \in Q$ and some fixed $u \in X$ with condition (1.2), (1.3). The left side of equation (5.1) represents the Frechét derivative $F^{\prime}(u) h$ of the operator $F=A+N: X \rightarrow Y$.

Theorem 5.2 Let the hypotheses $\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}$ with $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$, and Assumptions A.1, N.1, N.2 and F. 1 are satisfied. Then
(o) the number solutions of (1.1)-(1.3) is constant and finite (it may be zero) on each connected component of the open set $Y \backslash F(S)$, i.e. for any $g$ belonging to the same connected component of $Y \backslash F(S)$. Here $S$ means the set of all critical points of the operator $F=A+N: X \rightarrow Y$;
(p) let $u_{0} \in X$ be a regular solution of (1.1)-(1.3) with the right hand side $g_{0} \in Y$. Then there exists a neighborhood $U\left(g_{0}\right) \subset Y$ of $g_{0}$ such that for any $g \in U\left(g_{0}\right)$ initial-boundary value problem (1.1)-(1.3) has one and only one solution $u \in X$. This solution continuously depends on $g$.
The associated linear problem (5.1), (1.2), (1.3) for $u=u_{0}$ has a unique solution $h \in X$ for any $g$ from a neighborhood $U\left(g_{0}\right)$ of $g_{0}=F\left(u_{0}\right)$. This solution continuously depends on $g$;
(q) denote by $G$ the set of all right hand side $g \in Y$ of equation (1.1) for which the corresponding solutions $u \in X$ of (1.1)-(1.3) are its critical points. Then $G$ is closed nowhere dense in $Y$;
(r) if the singular points set of (1.1)-(1.3) is empty, then this problem has unique solution $u \in X$ for each $g \in Y$. It continuously depends on the right hand side $g$.

Proof (o) In the proof of Theorem 5.1 we have shown that the set of all singular points of $F$ is equal to the set of all critical points of $F$. Then the Ambrosetti theorem (see Proposition 2.2) implies the statement (o).
(p) Since $u_{0} \in X \backslash S$, where $S$ is a set of all singular (in our case all critical) points then by Proposition 2.10 the mapping $F$ is a local $C^{1}$-diffeomorphism at $u_{0}$. This proves first part of (p) for (1.1)-(1.3).

From $F$ as the $C^{1}$-diffeomorphism follows that $F^{\prime} \in C(X, Y),\left(F^{-1}\right)^{\prime} \in C(X, Y)$, where $F^{\prime}(u) h$ is the left hand side of $(5.1)$ and $\left(F^{-1}\right)^{\prime}(F u)=\left(F^{\prime}(u)\right)^{-1}$ for every $u \in X$. Hence linear problem (5.1), (1.2), (1.3) for $u=u_{0}$ has a unique solution $h \in X$ for any $g \in U\left(g_{0}\right)$ with $g_{0}=F\left(u_{0}\right)$. This solution continuously depends on all right hand side $g$. The proof of ( p ) is completed.
(q) In our case the equality $G=F(S)$ holds, where $S$ is the set of all critical (all singular) points of $F$. By the Smale-Quinn theorem (Proposition 2.9) we obtain the expected results.
(r) By Proposition 2.10, the operator $F: X \rightarrow Y$ is a local $C^{1}$-diffeomorphism at any point $u \in X$. Hence follows the last assertion.

Assumption H. 1 Linear homogeneous problem (5.1), (1.2), (1.3) (for $g=0$ ) has only zero solution $h=0 \in X$ for any $u \in X$.

By the point (p) of Theorem 5.2 we obtain the following corollary.
Corollary 5.1 Let the hypotheses of Theorem 5.2 and Assumption H. 1 hold. Then initial boundary-value problem (1.1)-(1.3) has a unique solution $u \in X$ for any $g \in Y$. Moreover, linear problem (5.1), (1.2), (1.3) has a unique solution $h \in X$ for any $u \in X$ and the right hand side $g \in Y$ of (5.1). This solution continuously depends on $g$.

Corollary 5.2 Let the assumptions of Theorem 5.2 be satisfied. Then we have:
(s) if the set $S$ of all singular (in our case all critical) points of $F$ is nonempty, then $\partial F(X \backslash S) \subset F(S) ;$
(t) if $F(S) \subset F(X \backslash S)$, then problem (1.1)-(1.3) has the solution $u \in X$ for any $g \in Y$, i.e. $R(F)=Y$ ( $F$ is a surjectivity of $X$ onto $Y$ );
(u) if $Y \backslash F(S)$ is connected and $X \backslash S \neq \varnothing$, then $R(F)=Y$ (the solvability of (1.1) - (1.3) for any $g \in Y$ ).

Proof By Theorem 5.2 (q) the set $F(S)$ is closed in $Y$ and by Proposition $2.9 F(X \backslash S)$ is open in $Y$. Hence we have the equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(X)=F(S) \cup F(X \backslash S)=F(S) \cup \overline{F(X \backslash S)}=\overline{F(X)} \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies that $F(X)$ is a closed set.
(s) Since $F \in C^{1}(X, Y)$ we get $\Sigma \subset S$, as in Theorem 5.1. Hence and by Theorem 4.2 (i)

$$
\partial F(X \backslash S) \subset \partial F(X \backslash \Sigma) \subset F(\Sigma) \subset F(S)
$$

(t) From the first equation of (5.2) we have $F(X)=F(X \backslash S)$ and so $R(F)$ is an open as well as a closed subset of the connected space $Y$. Thus $R(F)=Y$.
(u) Since $Y \backslash F(S)$ is connected, and by Proposition 2.2 we obtain the $\operatorname{card} F^{-1}(\{g\})=$ const $=k \geq 0$ for each $g \in Y \backslash F(S)$.

If $k=0$, then $F(X)=F(S)$ and $F(X \backslash S) \subset F(S)$ and this is a contradiction with $X \backslash S \neq \varnothing$. Thus $k>0$.

Assumption H. 2 Each point $u \in X$ is either a regular point or an isolated critical point of problem (1.1)-(1.3).

Theorem 5.3 Suppose that hypotheses $\left(\mathrm{S}^{\alpha+\rho}\right)$ with $\alpha \in(0,1), \rho>0, \alpha+\rho<1$, and Assumptions A.1, N.1, N.2, F. 1 and H.2 hold. Then for every $g \in Y$ there exists one solution $u \in X$ of (1.1)-(1.3). It continuously depends on $g$.

Proof The associated operator $F: X \rightarrow Y$ is a proper $C^{1}$-Fredholm mapping of the zero index. By Proposition $2.10 F$ is a local $C^{1}$-diffeomorphism at a regular point of $F$. In the isolated singular point, by Proposition $2.11 F$ is locally invertible. Since $F$ is proper, the global inverse mapping theorem (see Proposition 2.3) implies the statement of this problem.

Example 5.1 Example 4.1 illustrates the results of Chapter 5 for $f_{l}(u)=\sin \left(\sum_{i=1}^{l} u_{i}^{2}\right)$.

## 6 Conclusion

The studied models describe different natural science phenomena (a reaction-diffusion and environment models, a diffusive waves in fluid dynamics - the Burges equation, the wave propagation in a large number of biological and chemical systems - the Fisher equation, a nerve pulse propagation in nerve fibers and wall motion in liquid crystals).

We can apply the Fredholm theory to hyperbolic equations modeling different nonlinear vibration problems, to a nonlinear dispersion (the nonlinear Klein-Gordan equation), a propagation of magnetic flux and the stability of fluid notions (the nonlinear Sine-Gordan equation) and so on.

## References

[1] Agranovič, M.S. and Višik, M. I. Elliptic problems with a parameter and parabolic general type problems. Uspechi Mat. Nauk 19(3) (1964) 53-161. [Russian].
[2] Ambrosetti, A. Global inversion theorems and applications to nonlinear problems. Conferenze del Seminario di Matematica dell' Università di Bari, Atti del $3^{\circ}$ Seminario di Analisi Funzionale ed Applicazioni, A Survey on the Theoretical and Numerical Trends in Nonlinear Analysis, Gius. Laterza et Figli, Bari, 1976, P. 211-232.
[3] Andres, J., Gabor, G. and Górniewicz, L. Boundary value problems on infinite intervals. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 351 (2000) 4861-4903.
[4] Andres, J., Gabor, G. and Górniewicz, L. Topological structure of solution sets to multivalued asymptotic problems. Z. Anal. Anw. 19 (2000) 35-60.
[5] Aronszajn, N. Le correspondant topologique de l'unicité dans la théorie des équations différentielles. Ann. of Math. 43 (1942) 730-738.
[6] Banach, S. and Mazur, S. Űber mehrdeutige stetige Abbildungen. Studia Math. 5 (1934) 174-178.
[7] Borisovič, Ju.G., Zvjagin, V.G. and Sapronov, Ju.G. Nonlinear Fredholm mappings and the Leray-Schauder theory. Uspechi Mat. Nauk XXXII(4) (1977) 3-54. [Russian].
[8] Browder, F.E. and Gupta, Ch.P. Topological degree and nonlinear mappings of analytic type in Banach spaces. J. Math. Anal. Appl. 26 (1969) 390-402.
[9] Cacciopoli, R. Un principio di inversione per le corrispondenze funzionali e sue applicazioni alle equazioni alle derivate parziali. Rend. Accademia Naz. Lincei VI(16) (1932).
[10] Deimling, K. Nonlinear Functional Analysis. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, 1985.
[11] Ďurikovič, V. An initial-boundary value problem for quasi-linear parabolic systems of higher order. Ann. Polon. Math. XXX (1974) 145-164.
[12] Ďurikovič, V. and Ďurikovičová, Ma. Some generic properties of nonlinear second order diffusional type problem. Arch. Math. (Brno) 35 (1999) 229-244.
[13] Ďurikovič, V. and Ďurikovičová, Mo. Sets of solutions of nonlinear initial-boundary value problems. Topological Methods in Nonlinear Analysis, J. of the Juliusz Schauder Center 17 (2001) 157-182.
[14] Eideľman, S.D. Parabolic systems. Nauka, Moscow, 1964. [Russian].
[15] Eideľman, S.D. and Ivasišen, S.D. The investigation of the Green's matrix for homogeneous boundary value problems of a parabolic type. Trudy Moskov. Mat. Obshch. 23 (1970) 179-234. [Russian].
[16] Fujita, H. On some nonexistence and nonuniqueness theorems for nonlinear parabolic equation. Proc. Symp. Pure Math., v. 28, pt. 1. Nonlinear Functional Analysis. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, R. J. 1970.
[17] Górniewicz, L. Topological Fixed Point Theory of Multivalued Mappings. Kluwer Acad. Publ., Dordrecht-Boston-London, 1999.
[18] Henry, D. Geometric Theory of Semilinear Parabolic Equations. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg-New York, 1981.
[19] Ivasishen, S.D. Green Matrices of Parabolic Boundary Value Problems. Vyscha Shkola, Kiev, 1990. [Russian].
[20] Marteli, M. and Vignoli, A. A generalized Leray-Schauder condition. Lincei Rend. Sc. fis. mat. e nat. LVII (1974) 374-379.
[21] Martin, R.H. Nonlinear Operator and Differential Equations in Banach Spaces. Yohn Villey and Sons, New York-London-Sydney-Toronto, 1975.
[22] Quinn, F. Transversal approximation on Banach manifolds. Proc. Sympos. Pure Math. (Global Analysis) 15 (1970) 213-223.
[23] Sadyrchanov, R.S. Selected Questions of Nonlinear Functional Analysis. Publishers ELM, Baku, 1989. [Russian].
[24] Smale, S. An infinite dimensional version of Sard's theorem. Amer. J. Math. 87 (1965) 861-866.
[25] Solonikov, V.A. Estimations of $L_{p}$ solutions for elliptic and parabolic systems. Trudy Math. Inst. im. V.A. Steklova AN SSSR 102 (1969) 446-472.
[26] Solonikov, V.A. On Boundary value problem for linear parabolic differential systems of the general type. Trudy Math. Inst. im. V.A. Steklova AN SSSR 83 (1965) 3-162. [Russian].
[27] Šeda, V. Fredholm mappings and the generalized boundary value problem. Differ. and Integr. Eqns 8 (1995) 19-40.
[28] Taylor, A.E. Introduction of Functional Analysis. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, 1967.
[29] Trenogin, V.A. Functional Analysis. Nauka, Moscow, 1980. [Russian].
[30] Yosida, K. Functional Analysis. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg-New York, 1966.
[31] Zeidler, E. Nonlinear Functional Analysis and its Applications I, Fixed-Point Theorems. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg-Tokyo, 1986.
[32] Zeidler, E. Nonlinear Functional Analysis and its Applications II/B, Nonlinear Monoton Operators. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg-London-Paris-Tokyo, 1990.

# Influence of Propellant Burn Pattern on the Attitude Dynamics of a Spinning Rocket 

F.O. Eke ${ }^{1 *}$ and J. Sookgaew ${ }^{2}$<br>${ }^{1}$ Department of Mechanical and Aeronautical Engineering, University of California, Davis, CA 95616, USA<br>${ }^{2}$ Department of Mechanical Engineering, Prince of Songkla University, Hatyai, Thailand

Received: May 16, 2005; Revised: June 15, 2005


#### Abstract

This study examines the effect of various propellant burn geometries on the attitude dynamics of a rocket-type variable mass system. The three burn scenarios studied are the end burn, the centripetal burn, and the radial burn. Results of this study indicate that a change in burn scenario changes the predicted attitude motion. The differences are more pronounced for spin motion than for transverse attitude motion. The end burn is recommended whenever it is practically feasible; it is found to be the least disruptive from the point of view of attitude dynamics.


Keywords: Rockets; variable mass systems; attitude dynamics.
Mathematics Subject Classification (2000): 70P05, 70M20, 34C60.

## 1 Introduction

In the study of the dynamics of rockets, the fact that the system undergoes substantial mass variation is generally captured in one of two ways. One method is to view the system as a solid whose mass and inertia vary as functions of time [4,5]. The exact time functions used for both the mass and inertia scalars are based on reasonable guesses of what is likely to occur in real systems. Another approach is to show the propellant as a subsystem of the rocket, and then specify the physical and geometric manner in which the propellant mass is depleted. These facts are then used for the precise calculation of the mass and inertia functions for the system. Naturally, the second approach is preferable, since it eliminates the need for guessing the time histories of the mass/inertia properties. However, authors that have utilized this second approach have generally used very simple

[^2]models for both the rocket system and the propellant $[2,3]$. When a more complex model has been used [6], only one propellant burn pattern - the radial burn - is examined. The radial burn assumes that a cylindrically shaped solid propellant is ignited on its axis, and burns radially outwards towards its periphery. Yet, there are situations where it makes sense to assume an end burn for example; that is, a burn in which a cylindrical propellant is ignited at one of its ends, and burns towards the opposite end.

The goal of this paper is to examine if and how a change in burn pattern influences predictions of the attitude behavior of a rocket system. Specifically, three different burn patterns will be compared: the end burn, the centripetal burn, and the radial burn. This is important for two reasons. First, this study will lead to reasonably accurate predictions for a case that is in fact best captured by one of the burn scenarios studied, and for which results were previously unavailable. The second reason is that the results can be used as design tool in determining the type of propellant burn that should be implemented in order to produce certain desired dynamic effects.

## 2 Equations of Attitude Motion

The system studied here is a solid rocket motor and its payload, shown schematically in Figure 2.1. B represents the rocket's main body, assumed rigid, and $F$ is the solid fuel. The products of combustion are expelled through the nozzle. Both $B$ and $F$ are assumed to be axisymmetric, with a common axis $z$, and $F$ burns so as to remain axisymmetric at all times. The mass centers $F^{*}$ of $F, B^{*}$ of $B$, and $S^{*}$ of the overall system $S$ all lie on the axis $z$. Furthermore, we assume that the motion of the gas products of combustion relative to the rocket body is either axial, or symmetric with respect to the $z$-axis and with no transverse component. Finally, for this study, the velocity distribution of the exhaust gas particles as they traverse the nozzle exit plane is taken to be uniform as shown in Figure 2.1. The equations of attitude motion for this system can be written in the form (see, for example, $[1,6]$ ):

$$
\begin{gather*}
I \dot{\omega}_{1}+\left[\dot{I}-\dot{m}\left(z_{e}^{2}+\frac{R_{1}^{2}}{4}\right)\right] \omega_{1}+\left[(J-I) \omega_{3}\right] \omega_{2}=0  \tag{1}\\
I \dot{\omega}_{2}+\left[\dot{I}-\dot{m}\left(z_{e}^{2}+\frac{R_{1}^{2}}{4}\right)\right] \omega_{2}-\left[(J-I) \omega_{3}\right] \omega_{1}=0  \tag{2}\\
J \dot{\omega}_{3}+\left(\dot{J}-\dot{m} \frac{R_{1}^{2}}{2}\right) \omega_{3}=0 \tag{3}
\end{gather*}
$$

where $J$ and $I$ are the system's overall central axial and transverse moments of inertia respectively, $m$ is the mass, $\omega_{i}(i=1,2,3)$ are the components of the inertial angular velocity of $B$ in the $\boldsymbol{b}_{1}, \boldsymbol{b}_{2}, \boldsymbol{b}_{3}$ directions (see Figure 2.1), $R_{1}$ is the radius of the nozzle at the exit plane, and $z_{e}$ is the distance from the overall system mass center, $S^{*}$, to the nozzle exit plane.

In order to generate non-dimensional versions of equations (1) - (3), we introduce

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{r}=-\dot{m}=\int\left(\boldsymbol{v} \cdot \boldsymbol{b}_{3}\right) \rho d s=\pi \rho U R_{1}^{2} \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{F}=m_{F O}-m_{r} t \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 2.1. Rocket system with solid propellant.
where $\boldsymbol{v}$ is the velocity of exhaust fluid particles relative to the body $B, \rho$ is the mass density of the exhaust gas, $m_{F O}$ is the mass of the solid fuel at ignition, $m_{F}$ is the instantaneous mass of the fuel, $U$ is the constant magnitude of the axial velocity of the exhaust fluid particles as they cross the nozzle exit plane, and $t$ is time. Hence, the time from ignition to burnout, $t_{b}$, is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{b}=m_{F O} / m_{r} . \tag{6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Dimensionless time $\tau$, is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau=t / t_{b}=\left(m_{r} / m_{F O}\right) t \tag{7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This means that $\tau=0$ at fuel ignition, and $\tau=1$ at burnout.
Other useful dimensionless quantities are

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{m}=m / m_{F O}, \quad \bar{I}=I / m_{F O} R^{2}, \quad \bar{J}=J / m_{F O} R^{2}, \quad \text { and } \quad \bar{\omega}_{i}=\omega_{i} t_{b}, \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $R$ is the outer radius of the cylindrical propellant grain. Equations (1), (2), and (3) then become respectively

$$
\begin{align*}
& \bar{I} \bar{\omega}_{1}^{\prime}+\left\{\bar{I}^{\prime}-\bar{m}^{\prime}\left[\left(\frac{z_{e}}{R}\right)^{2}+\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}\right]\right\} \bar{\omega}_{1}+\left[(\bar{J}-\bar{I}) \bar{\omega}_{3}\right] \bar{\omega}_{2}=0,  \tag{9}\\
& \bar{I} \bar{\omega}_{2}^{\prime}+\left\{\bar{I}^{\prime}-\bar{m}^{\prime}\left[\left(\frac{z_{e}}{R}\right)^{2}+\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}\right]\right\} \bar{\omega}_{2}-\left[(\bar{J}-\bar{I}) \bar{\omega}_{3}\right] \bar{\omega}_{1}=0, \tag{10}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J} \bar{\omega}_{3}^{\prime}+\left(\bar{J}^{\prime}-\bar{m}^{\prime} \frac{\beta^{2}}{2}\right) \bar{\omega}_{3}=0 \tag{11}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the above equations, a prime indicates derivative with respect to the dimensionless time variable $\tau$, and $\beta$ is the nozzle expansion ratio $\left(R_{1} / R\right)$.

From equation (11),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\bar{\omega}_{3}(\tau)}{\bar{\omega}_{3}(0)}=\exp \left[-\int_{0}^{\tau} \frac{\psi(\tau)}{\bar{J}} d \tau\right] \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi(\tau)=\left(\bar{J}^{\prime}-\bar{m}^{\prime} \frac{\beta^{2}}{2}\right) \tag{13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, we follow established tradition $[3,6]$, and define complex angular velocity

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{\omega}_{T}=\bar{\omega}_{1}+i \bar{\omega}_{2}, \tag{14}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $i=\sqrt{-1}$. Equations (9) and (10) are then combined to give

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\bar{\omega}_{T}(\tau)}{\bar{\omega}_{T}(0)}=\left\langle\exp \left[-\int_{0}^{\tau} \frac{\varphi(\tau)}{\bar{J}} d \tau\right]\right\rangle \cdot\left\langle\exp \left[i \int_{0}^{\tau} \Theta d \tau\right]\right\rangle \tag{15}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi(\tau)=\bar{I}^{\prime}-\bar{m}^{\prime}\left[\left(\frac{z_{e}}{R}\right)^{2}+\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}\right] \tag{16}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Theta=[(\bar{J} / \bar{I})-1] \bar{\omega}_{3} . \tag{17}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is clear from (15) that the magnitude of the transverse angular velocity vector is controlled by the function $\varphi(\tau)$, while $\Theta(\tau)$ governs the frequency. On the other hand, the sign of $\psi(\tau)$ [see (12)] is an indication of whether the spin rate increases or decreases with $\tau$.

## 3 Spin Motion

To study the spin rate of the rocket body during propellant burn, it is necessary [see equations (12) and (13)] to determine expressions for instantaneous system mass and inertia. One way to determine these functions is to select a propellant depletion strategy. For this study, we choose to examine three different propellant depletion scenarios: the End Burn, the Centripetal Burn, and the Radial Burn. As the names indicate, End Burn refers to the case where the propellant burns from end to end. Centripetal Burn is the unusual case where propellant burn proceeds radially inwards from the outermost part of the fuel, and Radial Burn is the case where combustion starts from the propellant axis, and proceeds radially outwards.

### 3.1 End Burn

For the purpose of this study, the solid propellant $F$ is assumed to be a solid cylinder prior to ignition. For the end burn, this cylindrical fuel burns from the end closest to the nozzle towards the opposite end. The burn proceeds uniformly, in the sense that the unburned fuel is always a cylinder of the same radius as at ignition but with diminishing length as shown in Figures 2.1 and 3.1.

Using the symbols defined in Figure 3.1, the mass of fuel $F$ at ignition is

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{F O}=\rho_{F O} \pi R^{2} L \tag{18}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 3.1. Rocket model with end burning propellant.
and the mass at some intermediate stage of the burn is

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{F}=\rho_{F O} \pi R^{2} z \tag{19}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $z$ is the instantaneous length of the solid cylindrical propellant and $\rho_{F O}$ is its density. From equations (6), (18), and (19), the time from ignition to burnout is

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{b}=\frac{m_{F O}}{-\dot{m}_{F}}=\frac{\rho_{F O} \pi R^{2} L}{-\rho_{F O} \pi R^{2} \dot{z}}=\frac{L}{-\dot{z}} . \tag{20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating (20), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{z}{L}=1-\tau \tag{21}
\end{equation*}
$$

The dimensionless mass of the propellant is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{m}_{F}=\frac{m_{F}}{m_{F O}}=\frac{\rho_{F O} \pi R^{2} z}{\rho_{F O} \pi R^{2} L}=\frac{z}{L}=1-\tau \tag{22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{m}^{\prime}=\bar{m}_{F}^{\prime}=-1 \tag{23}
\end{equation*}
$$

The axial moment of inertia of the propellant is

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{F}=\frac{m_{F} R^{2}}{2} \tag{24}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the dimensionless version is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}_{F}=\frac{J_{F}}{m_{F O} R^{2}}=\frac{\bar{m}_{F}}{2}=\frac{1-\tau}{2} \tag{25}
\end{equation*}
$$

The combined axial moment of inertia of the system is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}=\bar{J}_{B}+\bar{J}_{F}=\bar{J}_{B}+\frac{(1-\tau)}{2} \tag{26}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 3.2. Rocket with propellant in centripetal burn.
where the subscripts $B$ and $F$ refer to bodies $B$ and $F$ respectively of Figure 2.1. Hence,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}^{\prime}=\bar{J}_{F}^{\prime}=-\frac{1}{2} \tag{27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substituting (23) and (27) into (13), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi(\tau)=-\frac{1}{2}\left(1-\beta^{2}\right) . \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

From (28), $\psi(\tau)$ is a constant that can be negative, zero, or positive depending on the value of the nozzle expansion ratio $\beta$. There is thus a threshold value $\beta=\beta_{L}=1$ for which the spin rate remains constant throughout the burn. The spin rate increases from ignition to burnout if $\beta>\beta_{L}$, and decreases from ignition to burnout for $\beta<\beta_{L}$. From (12), (26) and (28), a closed form solution can be shown to be

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\bar{\omega}_{3}(\tau)}{\bar{\omega}_{3}(0)}=\left[\frac{2 \bar{J}_{B}+1}{2 \bar{J}_{B}+1-\tau}\right]^{\left[1-\beta^{2}\right]} \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression confirms the above predictions.

### 3.2 Centripetal Burn

In centripetal burn, the cylindrical solid fuel is ignited at its periphery but not at any of its ends. It then burns radially inwards, with the radius decreasing uniformly along its length in such a way that the intermediate shape of the propellant is always a solid cylinder that has the same length as at ignition, but of decreasing radius (see Figure 3.2).

The mass of $F$ at ignition remains as given by (18), and the intermediate mass of $F$ during the burn is

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{F}=\rho_{F O} \pi L r^{2} \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $r$ is the intermediate value of the external radius of the propellant. The time from ignition to burnout in this case is

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{b}=\frac{m_{F O}}{-\dot{m}_{F}}=\frac{\rho_{F O} \pi L R^{2}}{-\rho_{F O} \pi L \frac{d}{d t}\left(r^{2}\right)}=\frac{R^{2}}{-\frac{d}{d t}\left(r^{2}\right)} \tag{31}
\end{equation*}
$$

This leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^{2}=1-\tau \tag{32}
\end{equation*}
$$

The dimensionless mass of the fuel is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{m}_{F}=\frac{m_{F}}{m_{F O}}=\frac{\rho_{F O} \pi L r^{2}}{\rho_{F O} \pi L R^{2}}=\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^{2}=1-\tau \tag{33}
\end{equation*}
$$

and once more,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{m}^{\prime}=\bar{m}_{F}^{\prime}=-1 \tag{34}
\end{equation*}
$$

The axial moment of inertia for the propellant is

$$
\begin{equation*}
J_{F}=\frac{m_{F} r^{2}}{2} \tag{35}
\end{equation*}
$$

So,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}_{F}=\frac{J_{F}}{m_{F O} R^{2}}=\frac{\bar{m}_{F}}{2}\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^{2}=\frac{(1-\tau)^{2}}{2} . \tag{36}
\end{equation*}
$$

For the overall system, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}=\bar{J}_{B}+\bar{J}_{F}=\bar{J}_{B}+\frac{(1-\tau)^{2}}{2} . \tag{37}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}^{\prime}=\bar{J}_{F}^{\prime}=-(1-\tau) . \tag{38}
\end{equation*}
$$

We then substitute (34) and (38) into (13) to obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi(\tau)=\left(\frac{\beta^{2}}{2}-1\right)+\tau \tag{39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (39) indicates that the function $\psi(\tau)$ increases linearly with time with unit slope, and $\psi(1)=\beta^{2} / 2$ is greater than $\psi(0)=\beta^{2} / 2-1 . \psi(1)$ is always positive; however, $\psi(0)$ can be negative, zero, or positive depending on the value of $\beta$. Figure 3.3 captures the three possibilities. If the nozzle expansion ratio is equal to or greater than $\beta_{L}=\sqrt{2}$, the spin rate will decrease from ignition all the way to burnout. Otherwise, the spin rate increases initially, changes sign at some point during the burn, then decreases for the remainder of the burn. The trend reversal occurs at


Figure 3.3. Function $\psi$ for centripetal burn.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau=1-\beta^{2} / 2 \tag{40}
\end{equation*}
$$

A closed form solution is also possible for (12) in this case. Using (12), (37) and (39) we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\bar{\omega}_{3}(\tau)}{\bar{\omega}_{3}(0)}=\left[\frac{2 \bar{J}_{B}+1}{2 \bar{J}_{B}+(1-\tau)^{2}}\right] \cdot \exp \left\{\frac{-\beta^{2}}{\sqrt{2 \bar{J}_{B}}}\left[\tan ^{-1} \frac{\tau \sqrt{2 \bar{J}_{B}}}{2 \bar{J}_{B}+1-\tau}\right]\right\} \tag{41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure 3.4 shows plots of the normalized spin rate as a function of $\tau$. The figure confirms the inferences given above.


Figure 3.4. Spin behavior for centripetal burn.

### 3.3 Radial Burn

For radial burn, the cylindrical propellant is ignited along its axis, and burns radially outwards in such a way that the intermediate shape of the propellant is a hollow cylinder, as shown in Figure 3.5. This case was studied in detail in [6], but the highlights will be presented here for completeness.


Figure 3.5. Rocket with radially burning propellant.

From Figure 3.5, the mass of propellant before ignition is

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{F_{O}}=\rho_{F O} \pi L\left(R^{2}-r_{0}^{2}\right) \tag{42}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the propellant mass at some instant after ignition is

$$
\begin{equation*}
m_{F}=\rho_{F O} \pi L\left(R^{2}-r^{2}\right) \tag{43}
\end{equation*}
$$

In (42), $r_{0}$ is the internal radius of the propellant at ignition. The time from ignition to burnout is thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{b}=\frac{m_{F O}}{-\dot{m}_{F}}=\frac{\rho_{F O} \pi L\left(R^{2}-r_{0}^{2}\right)}{\rho_{F O} \pi L \frac{d}{d t}\left(r^{2}\right)}=\frac{R^{2}-r_{0}^{2}}{\frac{d}{d t}\left(r^{2}\right)} . \tag{44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (44) can be integrated to give

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^{2}=\left(\frac{r_{0}}{R}\right)^{2}+\left[1-\left(\frac{r_{0}}{R}\right)^{2}\right] \tau=\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau \tag{45}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\gamma$ is the ratio $r_{0} / R$. We get from (42) and (43)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{m}_{F}=\frac{m_{F}}{m_{F O}}=\frac{\rho_{F} \pi L\left(R^{2}-r^{2}\right)}{\rho_{F} \pi L\left(R^{2}-r_{0}^{2}\right)}=\frac{1-(r / R)^{2}}{1-\left(r_{0} / R\right)^{2}}=1-\tau \tag{46}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{m}^{\prime}=\bar{m}_{F}^{\prime}=-1 . \tag{47}
\end{equation*}
$$

The axial inertia of $F$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}_{F}=\frac{J_{F}}{m_{F O} R^{2}}=\frac{\bar{m}_{F}}{2}\left[1+\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^{2}\right]=\left[\frac{1-\tau}{2}\right]\left[1+\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau\right] \tag{48}
\end{equation*}
$$

and that of the entire system is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}=\bar{J}_{B}+\bar{J}_{F}=\bar{J}_{B}+\frac{1+\gamma^{2}}{2}-\gamma^{2} \tau-\frac{1-\gamma^{2}}{2} \tau^{2} . \tag{49}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{J}^{\prime}=\bar{J}_{F}^{\prime}=-\left[\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau\right] . \tag{50}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equations (13), (47), and (50) give

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi(\tau)=\left(\frac{\beta^{2}}{2}-\gamma^{2}\right)-\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau \tag{51}
\end{equation*}
$$

This time the function $\psi(\tau)$ varies linearly with $\tau$, and has a slope of $\left(\gamma^{2}-1\right)$. The quantity $\gamma=r_{0} / R$ is strictly less than 1 ; hence, $\psi(\tau)$ has a negative slope. At ignition, $\psi(0)=\left(\beta^{2} / 2-\gamma^{2}\right)$, and this is likely to be positive for real rockets. At burnout, $\psi(1)=\left(\beta^{2} / 2-1\right)$. Hence, when $\beta \geq \beta_{L}=\sqrt{2}$, the spin rate decreases all the way to burnout, and when $\beta<\beta_{L}$, the spin rate decreases at first, but then reaches a minimum value when $\tau=\left(\beta^{2} / 2-\gamma^{2}\right) /\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right)$, and starts to increase all the way to burnout.


Figure 3.6. Spin rate behavior of radial burn.
Using equations (12), (49), and (51), it is again possible to solve for the spin rate in closed form:

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{\bar{\omega}_{3}(\tau)}{\bar{\omega}_{3}(0)}=\left[\frac{2 \bar{J}_{B}\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right)+1-\gamma^{4}}{2 \bar{J}_{B}\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right)+1-\left[\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau\right]^{2}}\right]  \tag{52}\\
\times \exp \left\{\frac{-\beta^{2}}{\sqrt{2 \bar{J}_{B}\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right)+1}}\left[\tanh ^{-1} \frac{\left[\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau\right]}{\sqrt{2 \bar{J}_{B}\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right)+1}}-\tanh ^{-1} \frac{\gamma^{2}}{\sqrt{2 \bar{J}_{B}\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right)+1}}\right]\right\} .
\end{gather*}
$$

Figure 3.6 shows two cases that match the above predictions when $\bar{J}_{B}=0.5$ and $\gamma=0.1$ are used as an example.

## 4 Transverse Angular Speed

The magnitude of the transverse angular velocity is obtainable from (15), and is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\frac{\bar{\omega}_{T}(\tau)}{\bar{\omega}_{T}(0)}\right|=\exp \left[-\int_{0}^{\tau} \frac{\varphi(\tau)}{\bar{I}} d \tau\right] \tag{53}
\end{equation*}
$$

The quantity $\bar{I}$ decreases with $\tau$ during a propellant burn, but is always positive. Hence, the sign of $\varphi(\tau)$ determines whether the magnitude of the transverse angular velocity increases or decreases with the burn. The central transverse moment of inertia of the rocket system can be written, in non-dimensional form as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{I}=\bar{I}_{B}+\bar{I}_{F}+\frac{m_{B} b^{2}+m_{F} a^{2}}{m_{F O} R^{2}} \tag{54}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the dimensionless transverse inertia of $B$ is $\bar{I}_{B}=I_{B} / m_{F O} R^{2}$.

### 4.1 End Burn

For the case of End Burn [see Figure 3.1], the transverse inertia of the propellant $F$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{I}_{F}=\frac{I_{F}}{m_{F O} R^{2}}=\bar{m}_{F}\left[\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{12}\left(\frac{z}{R}\right)^{2}\right]=(1-\tau)\left[\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{12} \delta^{2}(1-\tau)^{2}\right], \tag{55}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\delta$ is the ratio $L / R$, which can be referred to as the shape factor of the solid propellant. In subsequent equations, we will use $\delta_{i}=L_{i} / R$, for $i=1,2,3$ (see Figure 3.1 for $\left.L_{1}, L_{2}, L_{3}\right)$. The distances $a$ and $b$ can be expressed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
a=\frac{m_{B}}{m_{B}+m_{F}}\left[L_{2}+\frac{L(1-\tau)}{2}\right] \tag{56}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
b=\frac{m_{F}}{m_{B}+m_{F}}\left[L_{2}+\frac{L(1-\tau)}{2}\right] . \tag{57}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substituting equations (55), (56), and (57) into (54), and simplifying, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{I}=\bar{I}_{B}+(1-\tau)\left[\frac{1}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}(1-\tau)^{2}}{12}\right]+\frac{\bar{m}_{B}(1-\tau)}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\left[\delta_{2}+\frac{\delta(1-\tau)}{2}\right]^{2} . \tag{58}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{I}^{\prime}=\left[\frac{1}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}(1-\tau)^{2}}{4}\right]-\left[\frac{\bar{m}_{B}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\right]^{2}\left[\delta_{2}+\frac{\delta(1-\tau)}{2}\right]^{2}-\left[\frac{\bar{m}_{B}(1-\tau) \delta}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\right]\left[\delta_{2}+\frac{\delta(1-\tau)}{2}\right] . \tag{59}
\end{equation*}
$$

Again from Figure 3.1, the distance

$$
\begin{equation*}
z_{e}=L_{1}+L+a-\frac{z}{2} . \tag{60}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{z_{e}}{R}=\frac{\bar{m}_{B}\left[\delta_{2}+\delta(1-\tau) / 2\right]+\left(\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau\right)\left[\delta_{1}+\delta(1+\tau) / 2\right]}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau} . \tag{61}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finally, from (16), (23), (59), and (61), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi(\tau)=-\frac{1}{4}+\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}+\delta_{1}^{2}+\delta^{2} \tau+\delta \delta_{1}(1+\tau)+\frac{2 \bar{m}_{B}\left[\delta_{1}+\delta \tau\right]}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\left[\delta_{2}+\frac{\delta(1-\tau)}{2}\right]=-\frac{1}{4}+\varphi_{e}(\tau) \tag{62}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi_{e}(\tau)=\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}+\delta_{1}^{2}+\delta^{2} \tau+\delta \delta_{1}(1+\tau)+\frac{2 \bar{m}_{B}\left[\delta_{1}+\delta \tau\right]}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\left[\delta_{2}+\frac{\delta(1-\tau)}{2}\right] . \tag{63}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since each parameter that appears in $\varphi(\tau)$ is positive, and $0 \leq \tau \leq 1$, it is clear that $\varphi_{e}$ is always positive. In fact, it is most likely greater than $\frac{1}{4}$. Hence the function $\varphi(\tau)$ is likely to be always positive. We conclude then that in the case of End Burn, the
magnitude of the transverse angular velocity is damped as the propellant burns. The term "jet damping" truly applies in this case.

### 4.2 Centripetal Burn

We now consider the case of Centripetal Burn [see Figure 3.2]. Here,

$$
\begin{gather*}
\bar{I}_{F}=\frac{I_{F}}{m_{F O} R^{2}}=\bar{m}_{F}\left[\frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{12}\left(\frac{L}{R}\right)^{2}\right]=(1-\tau)\left[\frac{1-\tau}{4}+\frac{1}{12} \delta^{2}\right],  \tag{64}\\
a=\frac{m_{B} L_{3}}{m_{B}+m_{F}} \tag{65}
\end{gather*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
b=\frac{m_{F} L_{3}}{m_{B}+m_{F}} \tag{66}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substituting equations (64), (65), and (66) into (54), we obtain,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{I}=\bar{I}_{B}+(1-\tau)\left[\frac{1-\tau}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{12}\right]+\frac{\bar{m}_{B}(1-\tau) \delta_{3}^{2}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau} \tag{67}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{I}^{\prime}=-\left(\frac{1-\tau}{2}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{12}\right)-\left(\frac{\bar{m}_{B} \delta_{3}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\right)^{2} \tag{68}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case [see Figure 3.2],

$$
\begin{equation*}
z_{e}=L_{1}+\frac{L}{2}+a . \tag{69}
\end{equation*}
$$

So,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{z_{e}}{R}=\frac{\bar{m}_{B} \delta_{3}+\left(\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau\right)\left(\delta_{1}+\delta / 2\right)}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau} . \tag{70}
\end{equation*}
$$

From equations (16), (34), (68), and (70)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi(\tau)=-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\tau}{2}+\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{6}+\delta_{1}^{2}+\delta \delta_{1}+\frac{\bar{m}_{B} \delta_{3}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\left(\delta+2 \delta_{1}\right)=-\frac{1}{2}+\varphi_{c}(\tau) \tag{71}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi_{c}(\tau)=\frac{\tau}{2}+\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{6}+\delta_{1}^{2}+\delta \delta_{1}+\frac{\bar{m}_{B} \delta_{3}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\left(\delta+2 \delta_{1}\right) . \tag{72}
\end{equation*}
$$

We have here a situation that is similar to the End Burn case. $\varphi_{c}(\tau)$ is positive and increases with $\tau$. $\varphi_{c}(\tau)$ is most likely greater than $\frac{1}{2}$, even at $\tau=0$. Therefore the transverse angular speed is again a decreasing function from ignition to burnout.

### 4.3 Radial Burn

If the propellant undergoes a radial burn as shown in Figure 3.5,

$$
\begin{align*}
\bar{I}_{F}= & \frac{I_{F}}{m_{F O} R^{2}}=\bar{m}_{F}\left[\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{12}\left(\frac{L}{R}\right)^{2}\right] \\
& =(1-\tau)\left[\frac{1+\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{12}\right] \tag{73}
\end{align*}
$$

The distances $a$ and $b$ become

$$
\begin{equation*}
a=\frac{m_{B} L_{3}}{m_{B}+m_{F}} \tag{74}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
b=\frac{m_{F} L_{3}}{m_{B}+m_{F}} . \tag{75}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substituting equations (73), (74), and (75) into (54), we obtain, after some algebra,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{I}=\bar{I}_{B}+(1-\tau)\left[\frac{1+\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{12}\right]+\frac{\bar{m}_{B}(1-\tau) \delta_{3}^{2}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau} \tag{76}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{I}^{\prime}=-\left[\frac{\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau}{2}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{12}\right]-\left[\frac{\bar{m}_{B} \delta_{3}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\right]^{2} \tag{77}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since, the distance

$$
\begin{equation*}
z_{e}=L_{1}+\frac{L}{2}+a . \tag{78}
\end{equation*}
$$

We have,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{z_{e}}{R}=\frac{\bar{m}_{B} \delta_{3}+\left(\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau\right)\left(\delta_{1}+\delta / 2\right)}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau} . \tag{79}
\end{equation*}
$$

From equations (16), (47), (77), and (79)

$$
\begin{align*}
\varphi(\tau)=-\left[\frac{\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau}{2}\right] & +\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{6}+\delta_{1}^{2}+\delta \delta_{1}+\frac{\bar{m}_{B} \delta_{3}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\left(\delta+2 \delta_{1}\right)  \tag{80}\\
& =\varphi_{1}(\tau)+\varphi_{2}(\tau)
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi_{1}(\tau)=-\left[\frac{\gamma^{2}+\left(1-\gamma^{2}\right) \tau}{2}\right] \tag{81}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi_{2}(\tau)=\frac{\beta^{2}}{4}+\frac{\delta^{2}}{6}+\delta_{1}^{2}+\delta \delta_{1}+\frac{\bar{m}_{B} \delta_{3}}{\bar{m}_{B}+1-\tau}\left(\delta+2 \delta_{1}\right) . \tag{82}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, the minimum value that $\varphi_{1}$ can have is $-\frac{1}{2}$, but $\varphi_{2}$ is always positive and most likely greater than $\frac{1}{2}$. Hence, we have again that mass loss through radial propellant burn results in continuous damping of the transverse rate.

In summary, we find that the transverse angular velocity decreases in magnitude as propellant burn progresses for each of the three propellant-burn scenarios examined. We note, however, that this conclusion is not absolute. In other words, one cannot absolutely exclude the possibility of growth in the transverse angular speed with propellant burn. Some factors that could bring this about include small values of $\beta, \delta, \delta_{1}, \delta_{2}$ and $\delta_{3}$. We note that in [2] a variable mass cylinder model was used to show that the transverse rate can grow without bounds when the system is "short and fat," that is, for small $\delta$. This makes sense because when a cylinder is used to model a rocket system, we automatically have that $\delta_{i}(i=1,2,3)$ are all zero and $\beta=1$. If $\delta$ is small in addition, then there is a clear danger of having $\left|\varphi_{2}\right|<\left|\varphi_{1}\right|$ in (80). We also note that even for the extreme case of the cylinder, the authors [2] were not able to show divergence in transverse rate for End
and Centripetal Burns. It is easy to see this by setting $\delta_{i}=0$ and $\beta=1$ in equations (62) and (71).

## 5 Conclusion

This study examines how a spinning solid rocket's propellant depletion scheme affects the rotational dynamics of the rocket. Three mass loss scenarios - end burn, centripetal burn, and radial burn - were evaluated.

Results obtained indicate that for End Burn, spin rate can remain constant, increase, or decrease throughout the propellant burn depending on the value of the nozzle expansion ratio used. For Centripetal Burn, the spin rate will either decrease through the burn or increase at first then reverse itself and decrease to the end of the burn. In the case of Radial burn, the spin rate initially decreases then it can either keep decreasing or start increasing through the end of the burn. The value of the nozzle expansion ratio plays an important role in determining the character of the spin rate curve.

The transverse angular speed normally decreases with propellant burn irrespective of the type of burn adopted. For certain extreme choices of the parameters of the system, it may be possible to have the transverse rate increase with time for the radial burn.

## References

[1] Eke, F.O. and Wang, S.M. Equations of motion of two-phase variable mass systems with solid base. Journal of Applied Mechanics 61(4) (1994) 855-860.
[2] Eke, F.O. and Wang, S.M. Attitude behavior of a variable mass cylinder. ASME Journal of Applied Mechanics 62(4) (1995) 935-940.
[3] Mao, T.C. and Eke, F.O. Attitude dynamics of a torque-free variable mass cylindrical body. The Journal of the Astronautical Sciences 48(4) (2000) 435-448.
[4] Meirovitch, L. General motion of a variable mass flexible rocket with internal flow. Journal of Spacecraft and Rockets 7(2) (1970) 186-195.
[5] Thomson, W.T. Equations of motion for the variable mass system. AIAA Journal 4(4) (1966) 766-768.
[6] Sookgaew, J. and Eke, F.O. Effects of substantial mass loss on the attitude motions of a rocket-type variable mass system. Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory 4(1) (2004) 73-88.

# A "Patched Conics" Description of the Swing-By of a Group of Particles 

A.F.B.A. Prado*<br>Instituto Nacional de Pesquisas Espaciais, São José dos Campos, 12227-010, Brazil

Received: January 12, 2004; Revised: April 5, 2005


#### Abstract

We study the close approach between a planet and a cloud of particles. It is assumed that the dynamical system is formed by two main bodies in circular orbits and a cloud of particles in planar motion. The goal is to study the change of the orbit of this cloud after the close approach with the planet. It is assumed that all the particles have semi-major axis $a \pm \Delta a$ and eccentricity $e \pm \Delta \mathrm{e}$ before the close approach with the planet. It is desired to known those values after the close approach.


Keywords: Astrodynamics; swing-by; orbital maneuvers.
Mathematics Subject Classification (2000): 70F15, 70F07.

## 1 Introduction

In astronautics, the close approach between a spacecraft and a planet is a very popular technique used to decrease fuel expenditure in space missions. This maneuver modifies the velocity, energy and angular momentum of a spacecraft. There are many important applications very well known, like the Voyager I and II that used successive close encounters with the giant planets to make a long journey to the outer Solar System; the Ulysses mission that used a close approach with Jupiter to change its orbital plane to observe the poles of the Sun, etc.

In the present paper we study the close approach between a planet and a cloud of particles. It is assumed that the dynamical system is formed by two main bodies (usually the Sun and one planet) which are in circular orbits around their center of mass and a cloud of particles that is moving under the gravitational attraction of the two primaries. The motion is assumed to be planar for all the particles and the dynamics given by the

[^3]"patched-conic" approximation is used, which means that a series of two-body problems are used to generate analytical equations that describe the problem. The standard canonical system of units is used and it implies that the unit of distance is the distance between the two primaries and the unit of time is chosen such that the period of the orbit of the two primaries is $2 \pi$.

The goal is to study the change of the orbit of this cloud of particles after the close approach with the planet. It is assumed that all the particles that belong to the cloud have semi-major axis $a \pm \Delta a$ and eccentricity $\mathrm{e} \pm \Delta \mathrm{e}$ before the close approach with the planet. It is desired to known those values after the close approach.

Among the several sets of initial conditions that can be used to identify uniquely one swing-by trajectory, a modified version of the set used in the papers written by [18-20] is used here. It is composed by the following three variables: 1) $V_{p}$, the velocity of the spacecraft at periapse of the orbit around the secondary body; 2) the angle $\psi$, that is defined as the angle between the line $M_{1}-M_{2}$ (the two primaries) and the direction of the periapse of the trajectory of the spacecraft around $\left.M_{2} ; 3\right) r_{p}$, the distance from the spacecraft to the center of $M_{2}$ in the moment of the closest approach to $M_{2}$ (periapse distance). The values of $V_{p}$ and $\psi$ are obtained from the initial orbit of the spacecraft around the Sun using the "patched-conics" approximation and $r_{p}$ is a free parameter that is varied to obtain the results.

## 2 Review of the Literature for the Swing-By

The literature shows several applications of the swing-by technique. Some of them can be found in [1], that studied a mission to Neptune using swing-by to gain energy to accomplish the mission; [2], that made a similar study for a mission to Pluto; [3], that formulated a mission to study the Earth's geomagnetic tail; [4-6], that planned the mission ISEE-3/ICE; [7], that made the first studies for the Voyager mission; [8], that design a mission to flyby the Halley comet; $[9,10]$ that studied multiple flyby for interplanetary missions; [11, 12], that design missions with multiple lunar swing-bys; [13], that studied the effects of the atmosphere in a swing-by trajectory; [14], that used a swing-by in Venus to reach Mars; [15], that studied numerically a swing-by in three dimensions, including the effects in the inclination; [16], that considered the possibility of applying an impulse during the passage by the periapsis; [17], that classified trajectories making a swing-by with the Moon. The most usual approach to study this problem is to divide the problem in three phases dominated by the "two-body" celestial mechanics. Other models used to study this problem are the circular restricted three-body problem (like in [18-20] and the elliptic restricted three-body problem [21]).

## 3 Orbital Change of a Single Particle

This section will briefly describe the orbital change of a single particle subjected to a close approach with the planet under the "patched-conics" model. It is assumed that the particle is in orbit around the Sun with given semi-major axis (a) and eccentricity (e). The swing-by is assumed to occur in the planet Jupiter for the numerical calculations shown below, but the analytical equations are valid for any system of primaries. The periapse distance $\left(r_{p}\right)$ is assumed to be known. As an example for the numerical calculations, the following numerical values are used: $\mathrm{a}=1.2$ canonical units, $\mathrm{e}=0.3$,


Figure 3.1. The swing-by in the three-dimensional space.
$\mu_{J}=0.00094736, r_{p}=0.0001285347(100000 \mathrm{~km}=1.4$ Jupiter's radius $)$, where $\mu_{J}$ is the gravitational parameter of Jupiter in canonical units (total mass of the system equals to one).

The first step is to obtain the energy $(E B)$ and angular momentum $(C B)$ of the particle before the swing-by. They are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
E B=-\frac{1-\mu_{J}}{2 a}=-0.4162, \quad C B=\sqrt{\left(1-\mu_{J}\right) a\left(1-e^{2}\right)}=1.0445 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, it is possible to calculate the magnitude of the velocity of the particle with respect to the Sun in the moment of the crossing with Jupiter's orbit $\left(V_{i}\right)$, as well as the true anomaly of that point $(\theta)$. They come from

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{i}=\sqrt{\left(1-\mu_{J}\right)\left(\frac{2}{r_{S J}}-\frac{1}{a}\right)}=1.0796 \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\theta=\cos ^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{e}\left(\frac{a\left(1-e^{2}\right)}{r_{S J}}-1\right)\right]=1.2591
$$

using the fact that the distance between the Sun and Jupiter $\left(r_{S J}\right)$ is one and taking only the positive value of the true anomaly.

Next, it is calculated the angle between the inertial velocity of the particle and the velocity of Jupiter (the flight path angle $\gamma$ ), as well as the magnitude of the velocity of the particle with respect to Jupiter in the moment of the approach $\left(V_{\infty}\right)$. They are given by (assuming a counter-clock-wise orbit for the particle)

$$
\gamma=\tan ^{-1}\left[\frac{\mathrm{e} \sin \theta}{1+\mathrm{e} \cos \theta}\right]=0.2558
$$

and $V_{\infty}=\sqrt{V_{i}^{2}+V_{2}^{2}-2 V_{i} V_{2} \cos \gamma}=0.2767$ using the fact that the velocity of Jupiter around the Sun $\left(\mathrm{V}_{2}\right)$ is one. Figure 3.1 shows the vector addition used to derive the equations.

The angle $\beta$ shown is given by

$$
\beta=\cos ^{-1}\left(-\frac{V_{i}^{2}-V_{2}^{2}-V_{\infty}^{-2}}{2 V_{2} V_{\infty}^{-}}\right)=1.7322 .
$$

This information allows us to obtain the turning angle (2 $\delta$ ) of the particle around Jupiter, from

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta=\sin ^{-1}\left(1+\frac{r_{p} V_{\infty}^{-2}}{\mu_{J}}\right)^{-1}=1.4272 . \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The angle of approach $(\psi)$ has two values, depending if the particle is passing in front or behind Jupiter. These two values will be called $\psi_{1}$ and $\psi_{2}$. They are obtained from $\psi_{1}=\pi+\beta+\delta=6.3011$ and $\psi_{2}=2 \pi+\beta-\delta=6.5882$.

The correspondent variations in energy and angular momentum are obtained from the equation $\Delta C=\Delta E=-2 V_{2} V_{\infty} \sin \delta \sin \psi$ (since $\omega=1$ ). The results are:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta C_{1}=\Delta E_{1}=-0.009811, \quad \Delta C_{2}=\Delta E_{2}=-0.1644 \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

By adding those quantities to the initial values we get the values after the swing-by. They are:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
E_{1}=-0.4260, & C_{1}=1.0346 \\
E_{2}=-0.5806, & C_{2}=0.8801
\end{array}
$$

Finally, to obtain the semi-major axis and the eccentricity after the swing-by it is possible to use the equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
a=-\frac{\mu}{2 E} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathrm{e}=\sqrt{1-\frac{C^{2}}{\mu a}} \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The results are: $a_{1}=1.1723, \mathrm{e}_{1}=0.2937, a_{2}=0.8603, \mathrm{e}_{2}=0.3144$.

## 4 Orbital Change of a Cloud of Particles

The algorithm just described can now be applied to a cloud of particles passing close to Jupiter. The idea is to simulate a cloud of particles that have orbital elements given by: $a \pm \Delta a$ and $\mathrm{e} \pm \Delta \mathrm{e}$. The goal is to map this cloud of particles to obtain the new distribution of semi-major axis and eccentricities after the swing-by. Figure 4.1 and Figure 4.2 shows some results for a cloud of particles with $r_{p}=1.4 R_{j}$, for the case $\Delta a=\Delta \mathrm{e}=0.001, r_{p}=1.4 R_{J}$ and Figure 4.3 and Figure 4.4 shows the equivalent results with $r_{p}=10.0 R_{j}$ for $\Delta a=\Delta \mathrm{e}=0.001, r_{p}=10.0 R_{J}$.


Figure 4.1. Eccentricity vs. Semi-major axis before and after the Swing-By for "Solution 1".


Figure 4.2. Eccentricity vs. Semi-major axis after the Swing-By for "Solution 2".



Figure 4.3. Eccentricity vs. Semi-major axis before and after the Swing-By for "Solution 1".


Figure 4.4. Eccentricity vs. Semi-major axis after the Swing-By for "Solution 2".

## 5 Conclusions

The figures above allow us to get some conclusions. The solution called "Solution 1" has a larger amplitude than the Solution 2 in both orbital elements, but it concentrates the orbital elements in a line, while the so-called "Solution 2" generates a distribution close to a square. The area occupied by the points is smaller for "Solution 1". Both vertical and horizontal lines are rotated and become diagonal lines with different inclinations. The effect of increasing the periapse distance is to generate plots with larger amplitudes, but with the points more concentrated, close to a straight line.

## References

[1] Swenson, B.L. Neptune atmospheric probe mission. AIAA Paper 92-4371, 1992.
[2] Weinstein, S.S. Pluto flyby mission design concepts for very small and moderate spacecraft. AIAA Paper 92-4372, 1992.
[3] Farquhar, R.W. and Dunham, D.W. A new trajectory concept for exploring the earth's geomagnetic tail. J. of Guidance, Control and Dynamics 4(2) (1981) 192-196.
[4] Farquhar, R., Muhonen, D. and Church, L.C. Trajectories and orbital maneuvers for the ISEE-3/ICE comet mission. J. of Astronautical Sciences 33(3) (1985) 235-254.
[5] Efron, L., Yeomans, D.K. and Schanzle, A.F. ISEE-3/ICE navigation analysis. J. of Astronautical Sciences 33(3) (1985) 301-323.
[6] Muhonen, D., Davis, S. and Dunham, D. Alternative gravity-assist sequences for the ISEE-3 escape trajectory. J. of Astronautical Sciences 33(3) (1985) 255-273.
[7] Flandro, G. Fast reconnaissance missions to the outer solar system utilizing energy derived from the gravitational field of Jupiter. Astronautical Acta 12(4) (1966) 329-337.
[8] Byrnes, D.V. and D'Amario, L.A. A combined Halley flyby Galileo mission. AIAA paper 82-1462, 1982.
[9] D'Amario, L.A., Byrnes, D.V. and Stanford, R.H A new method for optimizing multipleflyby trajectories. J. of Guidance, Control, and Dynamics 4(6) (1981) 591-596.
[10] D'Amario, L.A., Byrnes, D.V. and Stanford, R.H. Interplanetary trajectory optimization with application to Galileo. J. of Guidance, Control, and Dynamics 5(5) (1982) 465-471.
[11] Marsh, S.M. and Howell, K.C. Double Lunar swingby trajectory design. AIAA Paper 88-4289, 1988.
[12] Dunham, D. and Davis, S. Optimization of a multiple Lunar-swingby trajectory sequence. J. of Astronautical Sciences 33(3) (1985) 275-288.
[13] Prado, A.F.B.A. and Broucke, R.A. A study of the effects of the atmospheric drag in swing-by trajectories. J. of the Brazilian Society of Mechanical Sciences XVI (1994) 537-544.
[14] Striepe, S.A. and Braun, R.D. Effects of a Venus swingby periapsis burn during an EarthMars trajectory. J. of Astronautical Sciences 39(3) (1991) 299-312.
[15] Felipe, G. and Prado, A.F.B.A. Classification of out of plane swing-by trajectories. J. of Guidance, Control and Dynamics 22(5) (1999) 643-649.
[16] Prado, A.F.B.A. Powered swing-by. J. of Guidance, Control and Dynamics 19(5) (1996) 1142-1147.
[17] Prado, A.F.B.A. and Broucke, R.A. A Classification of swing-by trajectories using the Moon. Appl. Mechanics Reviews 48(11) Part 2 (1995) 138-142.
[18] Broucke, R.A. The celestial mechanics of gravity assist. AIAA Paper 88-4220, 1988.
[19] Broucke, R.A. and Prado, A.F.B.A. Jupiter swing-by trajectories passing near the Earth. Advances in the Astronautical Sciences 82(2) (1993) 1159-1176.
[20] Prado, A.F.B.A. Optimal Transfer and Swing-By Orbits in the Two- and Three-Body Problems. Ph.D. Dissertation, Dept. of Aerospace Engineering and Engineering Mechanics, Univ. of Texas, Austin, TX, 1993.
[21] Prado, A.F.B.A. Close-approach trajectories in the elliptic restricted problem. J. of Guidance, Control, and Dynamics 20(4) (1997) 797-802.
[22] Szebehely, V. Theory of Orbits. Academic Press, New York, 1967.

# Fault Detection Filter for Linear Time-Delay Systems 

Maiying Zhong ${ }^{1,2}$, Hao $\mathrm{Ye}^{1}$, Steven X. Ding ${ }^{3 *}$, Guizeng Wang ${ }^{1}$ and Zhou Donghua ${ }^{1}$<br>${ }^{1}$ Department of Automation, Tsinghua University 100084 Beijing, P. R. China,<br>${ }^{2}$ Control Science and Engineering School, Shandong University<br>73 Jingshi Road, 250061 Jinan, China<br>${ }^{3}$ Gerhard-Mercator-University Duisburg, Germany

Received: December 12, 2004; Revised: May 12, 2005


#### Abstract

By extension of a fault detection optimization approach to linear time invariant (LTI) systems, this short paper deals with the fault detection filter (FDF) problem for linear time-delay systems with $L_{2}$-norm bounded unknown inputs. The basic idea is first to introduce a new FDF as the residual generator; and then based on an objective function to formulate the FDF design as an optimization problem. Through appropriate choice of the filter gain matrix and a post-filter, the convergence of the residual generator and satisfactory FDF performance can be achieved. A numerical example is given to illustrate the effectiveness of the proposed method.


Keywords: Fault detection; filter; robustness; sensitivity; time delay.
Mathematics Subject Classification (2000): 60G35, 93E11, 94A13.

## 1 Introduction

Many significant approaches to the problems of robust fault detection and isolation (FDI) have been developed during the past two decades, for instance unknown input observer (UIO), parity space, $H_{\infty}$ optimization, eigenstructure assignment, and $H_{\infty}$ filtering $[1,5,6,9,12]$. However, most of these aforementioned works are about delay-free systems. Time delay is an inherent characteristic of many physical systems, such as rolling mills, chemical processes, water resources, biological, economic and traffic control systems. To the best of our knowledge, only few researches on FDI have been carried out

[^4]for time-delay systems $[4,7,8,10]$. Note that [7] did not consider the influence of unknown inputs; [10] formulated the fault detection filter (FDF) design problem as a two-objective nonlinear programing problem where no analytic solution can be constructed in general; [8] extended the results of [10] to the discrete-time case. The authors' earlier work in [4] developed an LMI approach to FDF design for linear time invariant (LTI) time-delay systems, but the selection of weighting transfer function matrix has strong influence on FDF performance. Research on fault detection (FD) of time-delay system is as yet an open and important issue.

The main objective of this short paper is to deal with the FDF design problem for linear systems with $L_{2}$-norm bounded unknown input and multiple time delays. An FDF will be developed such that a robustness/sensitivity based objective function is minimized. The core of this study is the introduction of a new FDF as a residual generator and an extension of the optimization FDI method for LTI systems in $[2,3]$ to time-delay systems. A sufficient condition to the solvability of FDF is derived and a solution can be obtained by appropriate choice of a filter gain matrix and post-filter. Finally, a numerical example is given to illustrate the effectiveness of the proposed method.

Notations. Throughout this paper, the superscript T stands for the matrix transposition, $R^{n}$ denotes the $n$ dimensional Euclidean space. $R^{n \times m}$ is the set of all $n \times m$ real matrices. $I$ is the identity matrix with appropriate dimensions. $L_{2}$ denotes the space of square integrable vector functions over $[0, \infty)$. For $h(t) \in L_{2},\|h\|_{2}$ denotes the $L_{2}$-norm of $h(t)$. For a real matrix $P, P>0$ (respectively, $P<0$ ), means that $P$ is real symmetric and positive definite (respectively, negative definite). $\mathbf{R H}_{\infty}$ denotes the set of rational transfer functions analytic in closed right half plane. For $G(s) \in \mathbf{R H}_{\infty}$, $\|G(s)\|_{\infty}$ denotes the $H_{\infty}$ norm of transfer function matrix $G(s)$.

## 2 Preliminaries and Problem Formulation

### 2.1 Brief review of related FD approach

Consider LTI systems described by

$$
\begin{align*}
& \dot{x}(t)=A x(t)+B u(t)+B_{f} f(t)+B_{d} d(t)  \tag{1}\\
& y(t)=C x(t)+D u(t)+D_{f} f(t)+D_{d} d(t) \tag{2}
\end{align*}
$$

where $x(t) \in R^{n}, u(t) \in R^{p}, y(t) \in R^{q}$ are the state vector, control input and measurement output respectively. $d(t) \in R^{m}$ denotes the $L_{2}$-norm bounded unknown input, $f(t) \in R^{l}$ is the fault to be detected. $A, B, B_{f}, B_{d}, C, D, D_{f}$ and $D_{d}$ are known matrices with appropriate dimensions. It has been shown by Ding and Frank [3] that the dynamics of observer-based residual generator for systems (1)-(2) can be expressed as

$$
\begin{align*}
& \dot{\hat{x}}(t)=A \hat{x}(t)+B u(t)+H(y(t)-\hat{y}(t))  \tag{3}\\
& \hat{y}(t)=C \hat{x}(t)+D u(t), \quad r(s)=R(s)(y(s)-\hat{y}(s)) \tag{4}
\end{align*}
$$

or the frequency domain description

$$
\begin{aligned}
r(s)= & R(s)\left[\left(C(s I-A+H C)^{-1}\left(B_{d}-H D_{d}\right)+D_{d}\right) d(s)\right. \\
& \left.+\left(C(s I-A+H C)^{-1}\left(B_{f}-H D_{f}\right)+D_{f}\right) f(s)\right] \\
= & R(s) G_{\varepsilon d}(s) d(s)+R(s) G_{\varepsilon f}(s) f(s)=G_{r d}(s) d(s)+G_{r f}(s) f(s)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\hat{x}(t) \in R^{n}$ and $\hat{y}(t) \in R^{q}$ represent the state and output estimation vectors respectively, $r$ is the so-called residual signal. The transfer function matrix $R(s) \in \mathbf{R H}_{\infty}$, also called a post-filter, and observer gain matrix $H$ are parameters to be determined. In the case of a full decoupling of unknown input being not achievable, the main task of FDF design is to find a suitable $H$ and $R(s)$ such that the $H_{\infty}$ norm of $G_{r d}(s)$ is minimized by guaranteeing a desired sensitivity to fault. One widely accepted way is to formulate the FDF problem as the following optimal problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
J=\min _{R(s), H} \frac{\left\|R(s) G_{\varepsilon d}(s)\right\|_{\infty}}{\left\|R(s) G_{\varepsilon f}(s)\right\|_{\infty}} \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Under some assumptions, $[2,3]$ has developed an optimization method to solve the problem (5).

Lemma 1 [2,3] Consider system (1)-(2) and suppose the assumptions
(A1) system (1)-(2) is asymptotically stable when $u(t)=0, d(t)=0$ and $f(t)=0$ for $t \geqslant 0$;
(A2) $(C, A)$ is detectable;
(A3) $\left[\begin{array}{cc}A-j \omega I & B_{d} \\ C & D_{d}\end{array}\right]$ is of full row rank for $\omega \in[0, \infty)$
hold, then

$$
R^{*}(s)=Q^{-1 / 2}, \quad H^{*}=\left(B_{d} D_{d}^{\mathrm{T}}+Y C^{\mathrm{T}}\right) Q^{-1}
$$

solve the optimal problem (5), where $Q=D_{d} D_{d}^{\mathrm{T}}$ and $Y \geq 0$ is a solution of the algebraic Riccati equation
$Y\left(A-B_{d} D_{d}^{\mathrm{T}} Q^{-1} C\right)^{\mathrm{T}}+\left(A-B_{d} D_{d}^{\mathrm{T}} Q^{-1} C\right) Y-Y C^{\mathrm{T}} Q^{-1} C Y+B_{d}\left(I-D_{d}^{\mathrm{T}} Q^{-1} D_{d}\right) B_{d}^{\mathrm{T}}=0$
Moreover, $G_{r d}^{*}(s)$ is a co-inner matrix, where

$$
G_{r d}^{*}(s)=R^{*}(s)\left[C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1}\left(B_{d}-H^{*} D_{d}\right)+D_{d}\right]
$$

Remark 1 From the view point of FDI, Assumptions A1 and A2 are trivial and do not lead to a loss of generality. The results in Lemma 1 are true only under the assumptions made, in particular, Assumption A3. Upon removing it, the lemma will lose its validity [3].

### 2.2 Problem formulation

In this short paper, we consider the FDF problem for a class of linear time-delay systems described by

$$
\begin{gather*}
\dot{x}(t)=A x(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} x\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)+B u(t)+\sum_{j=1}^{L} B_{j} u\left(t-\mu_{j}\right)+B_{f} f(t)+B_{d} d(t)  \tag{6}\\
y(t)=C x(t)+D u(t)+D_{f} f(t)+D_{d} d(t)  \tag{7}\\
x(-t)=0, \quad u(-t)=0, \quad t \geqslant 0 \tag{8}
\end{gather*}
$$

where $x(t) \in R^{n}, u(t) \in R^{p}, y(t) \in R^{q}, d(t) \in R^{m}, f(t) \in R^{l}$ and matrices $A, B$, $B_{f}, B_{d}, C, D, D_{f}$ and $D_{d}$ are defined as in system (1)-(2). $A_{i}(i=1,2, \ldots, N)$ and $B_{j}(j=1,2, \ldots, L)$ are known matrices with appropriate dimensions. $\tau_{i}$ and $\mu_{j}$ denote known constant time delays. Throughout this work, Assumptions A1 to A3 corresponding to system $(6)-(8)$ are also made, that is
(A4) system (6)-(8) is asymptotically stable when $u(t)=0, d(t)=0$ and $f(t)=0$ for $t \geqslant 0$;
(A5) $(C, A)$ is detectable;
(A6) $\left[\begin{array}{cc}A-j \omega I & B_{d} \\ C & D_{d}\end{array}\right]$ is of full row rank for $\omega \in[0, \infty)$.
The type of filter considered in this paper is given by

$$
\begin{gather*}
\dot{\hat{x}}(t)=A \hat{x}(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} x_{u}\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)+B u(t)+\sum_{j=1}^{L} B_{j} u\left(t-\mu_{j}\right)+H(y(t)-\hat{y}(t)),  \tag{9}\\
\dot{x}_{u}(t)=A x_{u}(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} x_{u}\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)+B u(t)+\sum_{j=1}^{L} B_{j} u\left(t-\mu_{j}\right),  \tag{10}\\
\hat{y}(t)=C \hat{x}(t)+D u(t), \quad \varepsilon(t)=y(t)-\hat{y}(t),  \tag{11}\\
r(s)=R(s) \varepsilon(s),  \tag{12}\\
\hat{x}(-t)=0, \quad x_{u}(-t)=0, \quad t \geqslant 0, \tag{13}
\end{gather*}
$$

where $\hat{x}(t) \in R^{n}, \hat{y}(t) \in R^{q}$ and $x_{u}(t) \in R^{n}$ are vectors, $R(s) \in \mathbf{R H}_{\infty}$ is a so-called post-filter, $H$ is the filter gain matrix, $r$ is the generated residual. $H$ and $R(s)$ are parameters to be determined for achieving perfect FD performance. Especially, in the case of unknown input full decoupling being not achievable, the main task of FDF design is to determine $H$ and $R(s)$ such that
(i) When $d(t)=0$ and $f(t)=0$ for all $t$, the generated residual $r$ asymptotically decays to zero for any $u(t)$.
(ii) The residual $r$ achieves best compromise between sensitivity to faults and robustness to known input.
By denoting $e(t)=x(t)-\hat{x}(t)$ and $x_{d f}(t)=x(t)-x_{u}(t)$, the overall dynamics of the residual generator are governed by

$$
\begin{gather*}
\dot{e}(t)=(A-H C) e(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} x_{d f}\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)+\left(B_{d}-H D_{d}\right) d(t)+\left(B_{f}-H D_{f}\right) f(t),  \tag{14}\\
\dot{x}_{d f}(t)=A x_{d f}(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} x_{d f}\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)+B_{d} d(t)+B_{f} f(t)  \tag{15}\\
\varepsilon(t)=C e(t)+D_{d} d(t)+D_{f} f(t)  \tag{16}\\
r(s)=R(s) \varepsilon(s) \tag{17}
\end{gather*}
$$

It can be seen from the above that $u(t)$ has no influence on the residual $r$. The main problem of FDF can be formulated as to determine $H$ and $R(s)$ such that system (14)(17) is asymptotically stable, while an FDF designing performance index as in (5) is satisfied.

Remark 2 Compared with the residual generator used in [4, 7, 8, 10], here $x_{d f}\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)$ $(i=1,2, \ldots, N)$ in equation (14) is used instead of the time-delay state estimate error $e\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)$ in $[4,7,8,10]$. Notice that $x_{d f}(t)$, which describes the effect of $d$ and $f$ in state $x$, is independent of filter gain matrix $H$. Especially, under the assumptions on system (6) - (8) being asymptotically stable and $d, f$ being $L_{2}$-norm bounded, $x_{d f}(t)$ is also $L_{2^{-}}$ norm bounded. Finally, the FDF problem for time-delay system can be solved by an extension of the optimization FD approach in $[2,3]$.

## 3 Design of FDF

In this section, an extension of the FD approach presented in [2,3] will be performed for the FDF problem of time-delay system (6) - (8).

### 3.1 Basic idea of our study

Notice that if system (14) - (17) is asymptotically stable, then residual $r(t)$ is convergent to zero when $d(t)=0$ and $f(t)=0$. To express clearly the influences of past unknown input $d\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)$ and fault signal $f\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)$ on residual $r(t)$, we first separate $x_{d f}(t)$ into $x_{d}(t)$ and $x_{f}(t)$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \dot{x}_{d}(t)=A x_{d}(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} x_{d}\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)+B_{d} d(t),  \tag{18}\\
& \dot{x}_{f}(t)=A x_{f}(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} x_{f}\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)+B_{f} f(t) \tag{19}
\end{align*}
$$

and denote

$$
\begin{aligned}
\theta_{d}(t) & =\left[\begin{array}{llll}
x_{d}^{\mathrm{T}}\left(t-\tau_{1}\right) & x_{d}^{\mathrm{T}}\left(t-\tau_{2}\right) & \cdots & x_{d}^{\mathrm{T}}\left(t-\tau_{N}\right)
\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}, \\
\theta_{f}(t) & =\left[\begin{array}{llll}
x_{f}^{\mathrm{T}}\left(t-\tau_{1}\right) & x_{f}^{\mathrm{T}}\left(t-\tau_{2}\right) & \cdots & x_{f}^{\mathrm{T}}\left(t-\tau_{N}\right)
\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}, \\
A_{\theta} & =\left[\begin{array}{llll}
A_{1} & A_{2} & \cdots & A_{N}
\end{array}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

It is obvious that $\theta_{d}(t)$ and $\theta_{f}(t)$ respectively describe the influences of past unknown input $d\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)$ and fault signal $f\left(t-\tau_{i}\right)(i=1,2, \ldots, N)$, while $\theta_{d}(t)$ and $\theta_{f}(t)$ are independent of $H$. Recall that for $L_{2}$-norm bounded $d$ and $f$, the asymptotic stability of system (6)-(8) ensures that $x_{d}(t), x_{f}(t)$ and, furthermore, $\theta_{d}(t)$ and $\theta_{f}(t)$ are also $L_{2^{-}}$ norm bounded. Introduce vector $w(t)=\left[\begin{array}{ll}d^{\mathrm{T}}(t) & \theta_{d}^{\mathrm{T}}(t)\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}$ to describe both the present and past unknown input, and let $B_{w} \triangleq\left[\begin{array}{ll}B_{d} & A_{\theta}\end{array}\right], D_{w} \triangleq\left[\begin{array}{ll}D_{d} & 0\end{array}\right]$. From the above definitions, we have

$$
\begin{gather*}
\dot{e}(t)=(A-H C) e(t)+\left(B_{w}-H D_{w}\right) w(t)+\left(B_{f}-H D_{f}\right) f(t)+A_{\theta} \theta_{f}(t),  \tag{20}\\
\varepsilon(t)=C e(t)+D_{w} w(t)+D_{f} f(t),  \tag{21}\\
r(s)=R(s) \varepsilon(s) \tag{22}
\end{gather*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
r(s)=G_{r w}(s) w(s)+G_{r f}(s) f(s), \tag{23}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{gather*}
G_{r w}(s)=R(s) G_{\varepsilon w}(s), \quad G_{\varepsilon w}(s)=\left[C(s I-A+H C)^{-1}\left(B_{w}-H D_{w}\right)+D_{w}\right],  \tag{24}\\
G_{r f}(s)=R(s)\left[G_{\varepsilon \theta_{f}}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\varepsilon f}(s)\right], \quad G_{\varepsilon \theta_{f}}(s)=C(s I-A+H C)^{-1} A_{\theta},  \tag{25}\\
G_{\theta f}(s)=\left[\begin{array}{llll}
e^{-s \tau_{1}} I & e^{-s \tau_{2}} I & \cdots & e^{-s \tau_{N}} I
\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}\left(s I-A+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} e^{-s \tau_{i}}\right)^{-1} B_{f},  \tag{26}\\
G_{\varepsilon f}(s)=C(s I-A+H C)^{-1}\left(B_{f}-H D_{f}\right)+D_{f} . \tag{27}
\end{gather*}
$$

As in [3], we use $\left\|G_{r w}(s)\right\|_{\infty}$ to measure the robustness of residual against unknown inputs, while the sensitivity of residual to faults is represented by $\left\|G_{r f}(s)\right\|_{\infty}$. Then the FDF problem for time-delay system (6) - (8) can be further formulated as to find $H$ and $R(s)$ such that system (14)-(17) is asymptotically stable on one hand, while on the other hand solves the following optimization problem

$$
\begin{equation*}
J=\min _{R(s), H} \frac{\left\|G_{r w}(s)\right\|_{\infty}}{\left\|G_{r f}(s)\right\|_{\infty}} . \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

The procedure to solve the FDF problem is made of two steps, namely (a) the choice of filter gain matrix $H$ to ensure the asymptotic stability of system (14)-(17), and (b) the derivation of $R(s)$ so that ( $H, R(s)$ ) is an optimal solution of the problem (28).

Remark 3 By solving the above formulated FDF problem, not only the convergence of the residual but also the satisfactory robustness and sensitivity criterion of FD system defined in (28) are achieved.

### 3.2 Main results

The following Lemmas are required to solve the FDF problem.
Lemma 2 [11] System

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \dot{x}(t)=A x(t)+\sum_{i=1}^{N} A_{i} x\left(t-\tau_{i}\right), \\
& x(t)=0 \quad \text { for } \quad t \leqslant 0,
\end{aligned}
$$

is asymptotically stable, if there exist matrices $P>0$ and $R_{i}>0,(i=1,2, \ldots, N)$ such that LMI

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
A^{\mathrm{T}} P+P A+\sum_{i=1}^{N} R_{i} & P A_{1} & \cdots & P A_{N} \\
A_{1}^{\mathrm{T}} P & -R_{1} & \ddots & \vdots \\
\vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\
A_{N}^{\mathrm{T}} P & \cdots & 0 & -R_{N}
\end{array}\right]<0
$$

holds.

Lemma 3 [2] Given

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \widehat{M}_{1}(s)=V_{1}-V_{1} C\left(s I-A+H_{1} C\right)^{-1} H_{1} \\
& \widehat{M}_{2}(s)=V_{2}-V_{2} C\left(s I-A+H_{2} C\right)^{-1} H_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $H_{1}$ and $H_{2}$ are selected such that $A-H_{1} C$ and $A-H_{2} C$ are Hurwitz, $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ are invertible, there exists a stable solution $Q(s)$ for the equation

$$
Q(s) \widehat{M}_{1}(s)=\widehat{M}_{2}(s)
$$

Furthermore, the solution can be expressed by

$$
Q(s)=V_{2}\left[I+C\left(s I-A+H_{2} C\right)^{-1}\left(H_{1}-H_{2}\right)\right] V_{1}^{-1}
$$

Now we are ready to present the main results of this short paper, which give a sufficient condition to solve $H$ and parameterize FDF using the obtained solutions of $H$. By applying Lemma 2, we first present the determination of filter gain matrix $H$ ensuring the asymptotic stability of system (14)-(17) (with proof omitted).

Theorem 1 If there exist matrices $P_{1}>0, P_{2}>0, R_{i}>0, S_{i}>0(i=1,2, \ldots, N)$ and $Y$ such that LMI

$$
\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
A^{\mathrm{T}} P_{1}+P_{1} A-C^{\mathrm{T}} Y^{\mathrm{T}}-Y C+\sum_{i=1}^{N} R_{i} & 0 & P_{1} A_{1} & \cdots & P_{1} A_{N} \\
0 & A^{\mathrm{T}} P_{2}+P_{2} A+\sum_{i=1}^{N} S_{i} & P_{2} A_{1} & \cdots & P_{2} A_{N} \\
A_{1}^{\mathrm{T}} P_{1} & A_{1}^{\mathrm{T}} P_{2} & -S_{1} & 0 & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & 0 & \ddots & 0 \\
A_{N}^{\mathrm{T}} P_{1} & A_{N}^{\mathrm{T}} P_{2} & 0 & 0 & -S_{N}
\end{array}\right]<0
$$

holds, then system (14)-(17) is asymptotically stable. Moreover, the observer gain matrix is determined by

$$
H=P_{1}^{-1} Y
$$

After designing the filter gain matrix $H$, the remained important task for FDF design is the determination of a post-filter $R(s)$. Following studies show that under Assumptions of A4 to A6, for all $H$ ensuring the stability of system (14)-(17), there exists an $R(s) \in$ $\mathbf{R H}_{\infty}$ such that ( $H, R(s)$ ) is an optimal solution of the problem (28).

Theorem 2 Given system (6)-(8) with Assumptions of A4 to A6, there exists $R_{h}(s) \in \mathbf{R H}_{\infty}$ such that $\left(H, R_{h}(s)\right)$ is an optimal solution of (28), where $R_{h}(s)$ is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
R_{h}(s) & =Q^{-1 / 2}\left(I+C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1}\left(H-H^{*}\right)\right)  \tag{29}\\
H^{*} & =\left(B_{w} D_{w}^{\mathrm{T}}+Y C^{\mathrm{T}}\right) Q^{-1}, \quad Q=D_{w} D_{w}^{\mathrm{T}} \tag{30}
\end{align*}
$$

and $Y \geq 0$ is a solution of the following algebraic Riccati equation

$$
\begin{gather*}
Y\left(A-B_{w} D_{w}^{\mathrm{T}} Q^{-1} C\right)^{\mathrm{T}}+\left(A-B_{w} D_{w}^{\mathrm{T}} Q^{-1} C\right) Y-Y C^{\mathrm{T}} Q^{-1} C Y \\
+B_{w}\left(I-D_{w}^{\mathrm{T}} Q^{-1} D_{w}\right) B_{w}^{\mathrm{T}}=0 \tag{31}
\end{gather*}
$$

Proof Considering system (6)-(8) and the residual generator (20)-(22), define $G_{r w}(s), G_{\epsilon w}(s), G_{r f}(s), G_{\epsilon f}(s), G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}(s), G_{\theta f}(s)$ as in (24)-(27), and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& G_{y w}(s)=C(s I-A)^{-1} B_{w}+D_{w} \\
& G_{\epsilon w}^{*}(s)=C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1}\left(B_{w}-H^{*} D_{w}\right)+D_{w} \\
& G_{r w}^{*}(s)=R^{*}(s) G_{\epsilon w}^{*}(s) \\
& G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)=C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1}\left(B_{f}-H^{*} D_{f}\right)+D_{f} \\
& G_{\varepsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s)=C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1} A_{\theta} \\
& G_{r f}^{*}(s)=R^{*}(s)\left[G_{\varepsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\varepsilon f}^{*}(s)\right] \\
& \widehat{N}_{w}(s)=G_{\epsilon w}(s) \\
& \widehat{N}_{w}^{*}(s)=G_{\epsilon w}^{*}(s) \\
& \widehat{M}(s)=I-C(s I-A+H C)^{-1} H \\
& \widehat{M} * \\
& \widehat{M}=I-C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1} H^{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

Based on the left coprime factorization of $G_{y w}(s)$, it is easy to get

$$
G_{y w}(s)=\widehat{M}^{-1}(s) \widehat{N}_{w}(s)=\left(\widehat{M}^{*}(s)\right)^{-1} \widehat{N}_{w}^{*}(s)
$$

For any available $H$ ensuring the asymptotic stability of system (14) - (17), we then have

$$
\begin{gather*}
G_{r w}(s)=R(s) G_{\varepsilon w}(s)=R(s) \widehat{N}_{w}(s)=R(s) \widehat{M}(s)\left(\hat{M}^{*}(s)\right)^{-1} \widehat{N}_{w}^{*}(s)  \tag{32}\\
=R(s) \widehat{M}(s)\left(\widehat{M}^{*}(s)\right)^{-1} G_{\epsilon w}^{*}(s)
\end{gather*}
$$

Moreover, from Lemma 3, it is easy to verify that, for $R^{*}(s)=Q^{-1 / 2}$ and the above defined $\widehat{M}(s)$ and $\widehat{M}^{*}(s)$, there exists a matrix $\Gamma(s)$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Gamma(s)=\left[I+C(s I-A+H C)^{-1}\left(H^{*}-H\right)\right] Q^{1 / 2} \tag{33}
\end{equation*}
$$

such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widehat{M}(s)=\Gamma(s) R^{*}(s) \widehat{M}^{*}(s) \tag{34}
\end{equation*}
$$

It follows from (32)-(34) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{r w}(s)=R(s) \Gamma(s) R^{*}(s) G_{\epsilon w}^{*}(s)=R(s) \Gamma(s) G_{r w}^{*}(s) \tag{35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Also, from Lemma $3, R_{h}(s)$ in (29) and $\Gamma(s)$ in (33) satisfy

$$
\begin{align*}
& R_{h}(s)\left[I-C(s I-A+H C)^{-1} H\right]=Q^{-1 / 2}\left[I-C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1} H^{*}\right]  \tag{36}\\
& \Gamma(s)\left(Q^{-1 / 2}\right)\left(I-C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1} H^{*}\right)=I-C(s I-A+H C)^{-1} H \tag{37}
\end{align*}
$$

It is obtained from $(36)-(37)$ that

$$
\begin{gathered}
R_{h}(s) \Gamma(s)\left(Q^{-1 / 2}\right)\left(I-C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1} H^{*}\right)=\left(Q^{-1 / 2}\right)\left[I-C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1} H^{*}\right] \\
\Rightarrow \quad R_{h}(s) \Gamma(s)=I
\end{gathered}
$$

Thus, for $R(s)=R_{h}(s)$, we have

$$
G_{r w}(s)=G_{r w}^{*}(s)
$$

In the same way, we can get

$$
\begin{align*}
G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}(s) & =\Gamma(s) R^{*}(s) G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) \\
G_{\epsilon f}(s) & =\Gamma(s) R^{*}(s) G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s) \\
G_{r f}(s) & =R(s)\left[G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}(s)\right]  \tag{38}\\
& =R(s) \Gamma(s) R^{*}(s)\left[G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)\right]
\end{align*}
$$

and for $R(s)=R_{h}(s)$, we have

$$
G_{r f}(s)=G_{r f}^{*}(s) .
$$

Under Assumptions of A4 to A6, from Lemma 1 we know that $R^{*}(s)=Q^{-1 / 2}$ and $H^{*}$ given in (30)-(31) is an optimal solution of the problem (28) and, in this case, $G_{r w}^{*}(s)$ is a co-inner matrix. Therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|R^{*}(s) G_{\epsilon w}^{*}(s)\right\|_{\infty}=1, \quad\left\|R_{h}(s) G_{\epsilon w}(s)\right\|_{\infty}=1 \\
\left\|R^{*}(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)\right)\right\|_{\infty}=\left\|R_{h}(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}(s)\right)\right\|_{\infty}
\end{aligned}
$$

On the other hand, for co-inner matrix $G_{r w}^{*}(s)=R^{*}(s) G_{\epsilon w}^{*}(s)$ and for all $R(s) \in$ $\mathbf{R H}_{\infty}$, from (35) and (38) it is easy to get

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left\|G_{r w}(s)\right\|_{\infty}=\left\|R(s) G_{\epsilon w}(s)\right\|_{\infty}=\left\|R(s) \Gamma(s) G_{r w}^{*}(s)\right\|_{\infty}=\|R(s) \Gamma(s)\|_{\infty} \\
\left\|R(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}(s)\right)\right\|_{\infty}=\left\|R(s) \Gamma(s) R^{*}(s)\left[G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)\right]\right\|_{\infty} \\
\leqslant\|R(s) \Gamma(s)\|_{\infty}\left\|R^{*}(s)\left[G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)\right]\right\|_{\infty}
\end{gathered}
$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{\left\|R_{h}(s) G_{\epsilon w}(s)\right\|_{\infty}}{\| R_{h}(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}(s) \|_{\infty}\right.}=\frac{\left\|R^{*}(s) G_{\epsilon w}^{*}(s)\right\|_{\infty}}{\left\|R^{*}(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)\right)\right\|_{\infty}} \\
=\frac{1}{\left\|R^{*}(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)\right)\right\|_{\infty}},  \tag{39}\\
\frac{\left\|R(s) G_{\epsilon w}(s)\right\|_{\infty}}{\left\|R(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}(s)\right)\right\|_{\infty}} \geqslant \frac{\|R(s) \Gamma(s)\|_{\infty}}{\|R(s) \Gamma(s) t\|_{\infty}\left\|R^{*}(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)\right)\right\|_{\infty}} \\
=\frac{1}{\left\|R^{*}(s)\left(G_{\epsilon \theta_{f}}^{*}(s) G_{\theta f}(s)+G_{\epsilon f}^{*}(s)\right)\right\|_{\infty}}, \quad \forall R(s) \in \mathbf{R H}_{\infty} . \tag{40}
\end{gather*}
$$

It concludes from (39)-(40) that both $\left(H^{*}, R^{*}(s)\right)$ and $\left(H, R_{h}(s)\right)$ are the optimal solutions of problem (28).

Remark 4 The convergence of residual $r$ is guaranteed by a suitable selection of filter gain matrix $H$, while the selection of stable post-filter $R_{h}(s)$ in (29) delivers an optimal residual vector. Results in Theorem 2 also show that, for all $H$ ensuring the asymptotic
stability of system $(14)-(17),\left(H, R_{h}(s)\right)$ is one of the optimal solutions of the FDF problem.

## 4 Numerical Example

To illustrate the proposed FDF design method, a numerical example is given in this section. Consider a time-delay system of (6) - (8) with

$$
\begin{gathered}
A=\left[\begin{array}{rr}
0 & 1 \\
-1 & -2
\end{array}\right], \quad A_{1}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0.1 & 0 \\
0.1 & 0.2
\end{array}\right], \quad B=\left[\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
1
\end{array}\right], \quad B_{f}=\left[\begin{array}{l}
0.1 \\
0.1
\end{array}\right], \quad B_{d}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0.1 & 0 \\
0 & 0.1
\end{array}\right] \\
C=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 1
\end{array}\right], \quad D=0, \quad D_{f}=0, \quad D_{d}=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 0.1
\end{array}\right], \quad N=1, \quad L=0, \quad \tau=1
\end{gathered}
$$

By using the proposed approach, we obtain one solution as follows:

$$
\begin{gathered}
H^{*}=\left[\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
1.6056
\end{array}\right], \quad H=\left[\begin{array}{r}
1.0026 \\
-0.9212
\end{array}\right], \quad Q=100 \\
R_{h}(s)=Q^{-1 / 2}\left(I+C\left(s I-A+H^{*} C\right)^{-1}\left(H-H^{*}\right)\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

Over evaluation time window $[0,100]$ sec, suppose the unknown input is $d(t)=$ $\left[\begin{array}{ll}d_{1}(t) & d_{2}(t)\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}$, and $d_{1}(t), d_{2}(t)$ are band-limited white noise as in Figure 4.1 (a) and (b). Two faulty cases are considered, where the fault signals are respectively given in Figure 4.2 (a) and (b). Figure 4.3 (a) and (b) show the two cases of residual signal whatever the control input $u(t)$.


Figure 4.1. a) Unknown input signal $d_{1}(t)$; b) Unknown input signal $d_{2}(t)$.


Figure 4.2. a) Fault signal $f(t)$ : case I; b) Fault signal $f(t)$ : case II.


Figure 4.3. a) Residual signal $r(t)$ : case I; b) Residual signal $r(t)$ : case II.

## 5 Conclusion

In this short paper, the FDF design problem for linear time-delay systems with unknown input is studied. The main contributions of this work are the introduction of a new FDF, the formulation of an optimization problem based on a performance index, and the extension of the FD optimization approach for LTI systems to the time-delay systems. The convergence of the residual generator is ensured by suitabe choice of the filter gain matrix, while the FDF performance can be guaranteed by the selection of a corresponding stable post-filter in terms of a Riccati equation. A simulation example is given to show the effectiveness of the proposed method.

## Acknowledgements

This research was supported, in part, by grants from the China Natural Science Foundation, the Shandong Natural Science Foundation (Y2002G05), and Shandong Youth Scientists Foundation (03BS091).

## References

[1] Chen, J. and Patton, R.J. Robust Model-Based Fault Diagnosis for Dynamic Systems. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston, 1999.
[2] Ding, S.X., Ding, E.L. and Jeinsch, T. A new optimization approach to the design of fault detection filters. In: Proc. SAFEPROCESS'2000, Budapest, Hungary, 2000, P.250-255.
[3] Ding, S.X., Jeinsch, T., Frank, P.M. and Ding, E.L. A unified approach to the optimization of fault detection systems. Int. J. Adaptive Contr. Signal Processing 14(7) (2000) 725745.
[4] Ding, S.X., Zhong, M.-Y. and Tang, B.Y. An LMI approach to the design of fault detection filter for time-delay LTI systems with unknown inputs. In: Proc. Amer. Contr. Conf., Arlington, VA, 2001, P.2137-2142.
[5] Frank, P.M., Ding, S.X. and Koppen-Seliger, B. Current developments in the theory of FDI. In: Proc. SAFEPROCESS'2000, Budapest, Hungary, 2000, P.16-27.
[6] Gertler, J. Fault Detection and Diagnosis in Engineering Systems. Marcel Dekker, New York, 1998.
[7] Jiang, B., Staroswiecki, M. and Cocquempot, V. Fault identification for a class of timedelay systems. In: Proc. Amer. Contr. Conf., Anchorage, USA, May 2002, P.8-10.
[8] Jiang, B., Staroswiecki, M. and Cocquempot, V. Fault detection filter for a class of discrete-time systems with multiple time delays. In: Proc. 15th IFAC World Congress, Barcelona, Spain, July 2002. [CDROM].
[9] Kinnaert, M. Fault diagnosis based on analytical models for linear and nonlinear systemsatutorial. In: Proc. SAFEPROCESS'2003, Washington D.C., USA, 9-11 June 2003, P.37-50.
[10] Liu, J.H. and Frank, P.M. $H^{\infty}$ detection filter design for state delayed linear systems. In: Proc. 14th IFAC World Congress, Beijing, China, July 1999, P.229-233.
[11] Mahmoud, M.S. and Zribi, M. Controllers for time-delay systems using linear matrix inequalities. J. of Optimization Theory and Applications 100(1) (1999) 89-122.
[12] Mangoubi, R.S. and Edelmayer, A.M. Model based fault detection: the optimal past, the robust present and a few thoughts on the future. In: Proc. SAFEPROCESS'2000, Budapest, Hungary, 2000, P.64-75.

# Adaptive Output Control of a Class of Time-Varying Uncertain Nonlinear Systems 

Jing Zhou, Changyun Wen* and Ying Zhang<br>School of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Nanyang Technological University, Nanyang Avenue, Singapore 639798

Received: March 11, 2004; Revised: April 14, 2005


#### Abstract

In this paper, we present a new scheme to design adaptive controllers for single-input single-output uncertain time-varying systems in the presence of unknown bounded disturbances. No knowledge is assumed on the sign of the term multiplying the control. The control design is achieved by introducing certain well defined functions, estimating variation rates of parameters and incorporating a Nussbaum gain. To overcome the problem of overparametrization, tuning functions, which are different from the standard ones due to the use of projection operations, are employed. It is shown that the proposed controller can guarantee global uniform ultimate boundedness.


Keywords: Adaptive control; backstepping; time-varying systems; tuning functions; Nussbaum gain.
Mathematics Subject Classification (2000): 93C40.

## 1 Introduction

Adaptive control has seen significant development since the appearance of a Lyapunovbased recursive design procedure known as backstepping [7]. A great deal of attention has been paid to tackle both linear and nonlinear systems with unknown parameters and a number of results have been obtained in $[1-6]$. However, only limited number of results are available for nonlinear systems with time-varying parameters and/or without the knowledge on the sign of the term multiplying the control, i.e. high frequency gain in the case of linear systems, in the presence of external disturbances. In this paper, we shall also call this term the high frequency gain for nonlinear systems for simplicity.

In [9], output feedback control was considered for linear time-varying systems when the sign of high-frequency gain is known. In [11], the problem of adaptive control with

[^5]unknown sign of high-frequency gain for linear time invariant systems was studied. In [2], Nussbaum gain incorporated with the backstepping technique was used to design adaptive output stabilizer for high order uncertain time invariant nonlinear systems with unknown sign of high-frequency gain in the absence of external disturbances. The nonlinearities considered should satisfy sector conditions. In [3], disturbance decoupling was addressed for nonlinear time invariant systems with known sign of the high frequency gain. The result obtained is critically depending on a function of the system output $y$ and the reference trajectory $y_{r}$. It should be noted that such a function is undefined at the time instants when $y=y_{r}$. Therefore, the control signal is undefined at these time instants. In [4], a flat zone was used to handle the problem of nonlinear time invariant systems with unknown sign of high frequency gain in the presence of disturbances. The bound of the disturbance and all the unknown parameters need to be estimated at every step in the backstepping process. This results in the problem of overparametrization and makes the implementation complicated. In [6] state-feedback control was considered for a class of uncertain time-varying nonlinear systems in the presence of disturbances. Due to state feedback, no filter is required for state estimation. Thus the derivatives of the time varying parameters and the term of the disturbance need not to be considered in controller design. This also makes the stability analysis greatly simplified. Again, parameters are required to be estimated at every step, which results in overparametrization. In the case of output feedback control of nonlinear time-varying systems in the presence of disturbances, no result is available. In this case, filters similar to $[7]$ are required to estimate system states and the state equations of the state estimation error will be used in the design and analysis. In these equations, the external disturbances and derivatives of time-varying parameters will appear and have great impact on the errors. This makes the design and analysis quite difficult, especially when the sign of high frequency gain is unknown and tuning functions are used.

In this paper, we consider such a case and propose a new control design scheme to solve the problem. The nonlinearities considered are not required to satisfy the sector type of conditions like [2]. To handle the disturbances, well defined functions are introduced to eliminate their effects in the Lyapunov functions employed in the recursive design steps. To deal with the time variation problem, an estimator is used to estimate the bound of the variation rates. Furthermore, the overparametrization problem is also solved by using the concept of tuning functions. As projection operation is used, the design of tuning functions are different from existing schemes as in [7]. With our proposed controller, global system stability is ensured.

## 2 System Model and Problem Formulation

Consider the following class of single-input-single-output (SISO) nonlinear time-varying systems in the feedback form

$$
\begin{align*}
& \dot{x}_{1}=x_{2}+\theta_{a 1}(t) \psi_{a 1}(y)+d_{1}(t) \phi_{a 1}(y)+\psi_{01}(y), \\
& \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \\
& \dot{x}_{\rho-1}=x_{\rho}+\theta_{a \rho-1}(t) \psi_{a \rho-1}(y)+d_{\rho-1}(t) \phi_{a \rho-1}(y)+\psi_{0 \rho-1}(y),  \tag{1}\\
& \dot{x}_{\rho}=x_{\rho+1}+\theta_{a \rho}(t) \psi_{a \rho}(y)+d_{\rho}(t) \phi_{a \rho}(y)+\psi_{0 \rho}(y)+b_{m}(t) u,
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\dot{x}_{n} & =\theta_{a n}(t) \psi_{a n}(y)+d_{n}(t) \phi_{a n}(y)+\psi_{0 n}(y)+b_{0}(t) u, \\
y & =e_{1}^{\mathrm{T}} x,
\end{aligned}
$$

where $x=\left[x_{1}, \cdots, x_{n}\right]^{\mathrm{T}} \in R^{n}, u \in R$ and $y \in R$ are system states, input and output respectively, $b_{i}(t), i=m, \ldots, 0$, are bounded uncertain time-varying piecewise continuous high-frequency gains, $\theta_{a i}(t) \in R^{p_{i}}$ are uncertain time-varying parameters, $d_{i}(t)$, $i=1, \ldots, n$, denote unknown time-varying bounded disturbances, $\psi_{a i}$ and $\phi_{a i}$ are known smooth nonlinear functions in $R^{n}$. Similar class of systems was analyzed in [8].

In order to cope with the unknown sign of high-frequency gain, the Nussbaum gain technique is employed in this paper. A function $N(\chi)$ is called a Nussbaum-type function if it has the following properties [10]

$$
\begin{align*}
& \lim _{s \rightarrow \infty} \sup \frac{1}{s} \int_{0}^{s} N(\chi) d \chi=\infty  \tag{2}\\
& \lim _{s \rightarrow \infty} \inf \frac{1}{s} \int_{0}^{s} N(\chi) d \chi=-\infty \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

In this paper, the even Nussbaum function $\exp \left(\chi^{2}\right) \cos \left(\frac{\pi}{2} \chi\right)$ is exploited. As in [6] the following Lemma will be employed in later analysis.

Lemma 1 Let $V(t)$ and $\chi(t)$ be a smooth function defined on $\left[0, t_{f}\right)$ with $V(t) \geq 0$, $\forall t \in\left[0, t_{f}\right)$, and $N(\chi)=\exp \left(\chi^{2}\right) \cos \left(\frac{\pi}{2} \chi\right)$ be an even smooth Nussbaum-type function. If the following inequality holds:

$$
\begin{equation*}
V(t) \leq f_{0}+e^{-f_{1} t} \int_{0}^{t} g_{1} N(\chi) \dot{\chi} d \tau+e^{-f_{1} t} \int_{0}^{t} \dot{\chi}(t) e^{f_{1} \tau} d \tau \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where constant $f_{1}>0, g_{1}$ is a parameter which takes values in the unknown closed intervals $I_{1}=\left[l_{1}^{-}, l_{1}^{+}\right]$with $0 \notin I_{1}$, and $f_{0}$ represents some suitable constant, then $V(t)$, $\chi(t)$ and $\int_{0}^{t} g_{1} N(\chi) \dot{\chi} d \tau$ must be bounded on $\left[0, t_{f}\right)$.

For the considered system (1), the following assumptions are imposed.
Assumption 1 The uncertain parameter vector $\theta$ is inside a compact set $\Omega_{\theta}$, where $\theta=\left[b_{m}(t), \ldots, b_{0}(t), \theta_{a 1}(t), \ldots, \theta_{a n}(t)\right]^{\mathrm{T}}$. In addition, there exists an unknown bounded positive constant $q$ so that $q \geq\|\dot{\theta}\|$. Also $q$ is inside a compact intervals $\Omega_{q}=\left[I^{-}, I^{+}\right]$ and $b_{m}(t) \neq 0, \forall t$.

Assumption 2 The relative degree $\rho$ is fixed and known. This is ensured by Assumption 1.

Assumption 3 The reference signal $y_{r}$ and its $(\rho-1)$-th order derivatives are also assumed to be known and bounded.

Assumption 4 The system is minimum phase in the sense defined in [8].
In order to design the desired adaptive control law with output via backstepping procedures, we now transform system (1) into the following form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}=A x+F(y, u)^{\mathrm{T}} \theta+\Phi_{a}(y) d(t)^{\mathrm{T}}+\psi_{0}(y) \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
A & =\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
0 & 1 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & \ldots & 0 \\
\ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & . \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0
\end{array}\right],  \tag{6}\\
F(y, u)^{\mathrm{T}} & =\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
{\left[\begin{array}{c}
0_{(\rho-1) \times(m+1)} \\
I_{m+1}
\end{array}\right] u, \Psi_{a}(y)}
\end{array}\right],  \tag{7}\\
\Psi_{a}(y) & =\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\psi_{a 1}^{\mathrm{T}} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & \psi_{a 2}^{\mathrm{T}} & \ldots & 0 \\
\ldots \ldots . \ldots \ldots \ldots . . \\
0 & 0 & \ldots & \psi_{a n}^{\mathrm{T}}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\Psi_{a 1}(y) \\
\vdots \\
\Psi_{a n}(y)
\end{array}\right],  \tag{8}\\
\Phi_{a}(y) & =\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\phi_{a 1}^{\mathrm{T}} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & \phi_{a 2}^{\mathrm{T}} & \ldots & 0 \\
\ldots \ldots . \ldots \ldots \ldots . \\
0 & 0 & \ldots & \phi_{a n}^{\mathrm{T}}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\Phi_{a 1}^{\mathrm{T}}(y) \\
\vdots \\
\Phi_{a n}^{\mathrm{T}}(y)
\end{array}\right],  \tag{9}\\
\theta & =\left[b_{m}(t), \ldots, b_{0}(t), \theta_{a 1}(t), \ldots, \theta_{a n}(t)\right]^{\mathrm{T}},  \tag{10}\\
d(t) & =\left[d_{1}(t), \ldots, d_{n}(t)\right],  \tag{11}\\
\psi_{0}(y) & =\left[\psi_{01}(y), \ldots, \psi_{0 n}(y)\right]^{\mathrm{T}} . \tag{12}
\end{align*}
$$

We employ the filters similar to those in [7], i.e.

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{\xi} & =A_{0} \xi+k y+\psi_{0}(y)  \tag{13}\\
\dot{\Omega}^{\mathrm{T}} & =A_{0} \Omega^{\mathrm{T}}+F(y, u)^{\mathrm{T}} \tag{14}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
k & \triangleq\left[k_{1}, k_{2}, \ldots, k_{n}\right]^{\mathrm{T}},  \tag{15}\\
A_{0} & =A-k e_{1}^{\mathrm{T}} . \tag{16}
\end{align*}
$$

The vector $k$ in (15) is chosen such that the matrix $A_{0}$ is strictly stable. It can be shown that $\Omega$ obtained from (14) satisfies the following equations

$$
\begin{align*}
\Omega^{\mathrm{T}} & =\left[v_{m}, \ldots, v_{1}, v_{0}, \Xi\right],  \tag{17}\\
\dot{\Xi} & =A_{0} \Xi+\Psi_{a}(y),  \tag{18}\\
\dot{\lambda} & =A_{0} \lambda+e_{n} u,  \tag{19}\\
v_{j} & =A_{0}^{j} \lambda . \tag{20}
\end{align*}
$$

From our designed filters, system (1) can be represented as

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{y} & =b_{m} v_{m, 2}+\beta+\bar{\omega}^{\mathrm{T}} \theta+\epsilon_{2}+d(t) \Phi_{a 1}(y)  \tag{21}\\
\dot{v}_{m, i} & =v_{m, i+1}-k_{i} v_{m, 1}, \quad i=2,3, \ldots, \rho-1  \tag{22}\\
\dot{v}_{m, \rho} & =v_{m, \rho+1}-k_{\rho} v_{m, 1}+u \tag{23}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
& \beta=\xi_{2}+\psi_{01}  \tag{24}\\
& \omega=\left[v_{m, 2}, v_{m-1,2}, \ldots, v_{0,2}, \Xi_{2}+\Psi_{a 1}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}  \tag{25}\\
& \bar{\omega}=\left[0, v_{m-1,2}, \ldots, v_{0,2}, \Xi_{2}+\Psi_{a 1}\right]^{\mathrm{T}} \tag{26}
\end{align*}
$$

In the above equations, $\epsilon_{2}, v_{i, 2}$ and $\xi_{i, 2}$ denote the second entries of $\epsilon, v_{i}$ and $\xi_{i}$ respectively, $\epsilon$ is the estimation error defined in (28).

With the above filters, a state estimate is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{x}=\xi+\Omega^{\mathrm{T}} \theta \tag{27}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the estimation error $\epsilon$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon=x-\hat{x} \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the equations $(5),(13),(14),(27)$ and $(28)$, the estimation error satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\epsilon}=A_{0} \epsilon+\Phi_{a}(y) d(t)^{\mathrm{T}}-\Omega^{\mathrm{T}} \dot{\theta} \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 1 The error $\epsilon$ will be used in our design and analysis given later. As the disturbances and derivatives of time-varying parameters appear in (29), their effects should be considered in controller design. However for the state-feedback control in [6], no filter is required for state estimation. Their effects may not be necessarily considered in controller design and this makes the problem much simpler.

We now divide the error $\epsilon$ into two parts, i.e. $\epsilon=\epsilon_{a}+\epsilon_{b}$, where $\epsilon_{a}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\epsilon}_{a}=A_{0} \epsilon_{a}+\Phi_{a}(y) d(t)^{\mathrm{T}} \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\epsilon_{a}(0)=\epsilon(0)$, and $\epsilon_{b}=\int_{0}^{t} e^{A_{0}(t-\tau)}\left(-\Omega^{\mathrm{T}} \dot{\theta}\right) d \tau$. It can be shown that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\epsilon_{b}\right\| & \leq \int_{0}^{t}\left\|e^{A_{0}(t-\tau)}\right\|\|\Omega\|\|\dot{\theta}\| d \tau  \tag{31}\\
& \leq q \int_{0}^{t}\left\|e^{A_{0}(t-\tau)}\right\|\|\Omega\| d \tau \leq q \int_{0}^{t} e^{-\lambda_{\theta}(t-\tau)} k_{\theta}\|\Omega\| d \tau
\end{align*}
$$

where $\lambda_{\theta}$ and $k_{\theta}$ are chosen positive parameters so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
k_{\theta} e^{-\lambda_{\theta} t} \geq\left\|e^{A_{0} t}\right\|, \quad \forall t \geq 0 \tag{32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus $\epsilon_{b}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\epsilon_{b}\right| \leq h(t) q, \tag{33}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $h(t)$ is generated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{h}=-\lambda_{\theta} h+k_{\theta}\left(\|\Omega\|^{2}+\frac{1}{4}\right) . \tag{34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Suppose $P \in R^{n \times n}$ is a positive definite matrix, satisfying $P A_{0}+A_{0}^{\mathrm{T}} P \leq-3 I$ and let

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{\epsilon}=\epsilon_{a}^{\mathrm{T}} P \epsilon_{a} \tag{35}
\end{equation*}
$$

It can be shown that

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{V}_{\epsilon} & =\epsilon_{a}^{\mathrm{T}}\left(P A_{0}+A_{0}^{\mathrm{T}} P\right) \epsilon_{a}+2 \epsilon_{a}^{\mathrm{T}} P \Phi_{a}(y) d(t)^{\mathrm{T}}  \tag{36}\\
& \leq-2\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2}+\left\|P \Phi_{a}(y) d(t)^{\mathrm{T}}\right\|^{2} .
\end{align*}
$$

The problem of this paper is to design an adaptive controller to make system (1) BIBO stable.

## 3 Control Design

In this section, we present the adaptive control design using the backstepping technique with tuning functions in $\rho$ steps. In order to avoid using the sign of the high frequency gain, we take the change of coordinates

$$
\begin{align*}
z_{1} & =y-y_{r}  \tag{37}\\
z_{i} & =v_{m, i}-\alpha_{i-1}, i=2,3, \ldots, \rho \tag{38}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\alpha_{i-1}$ is the virtual control at each step and will be determined in later discussions. Before presenting the detail, a useful function is introduced. Firstly we define $s(x)$ as

$$
s(x)= \begin{cases}x^{2} & |x| \geq \delta  \tag{39}\\ \left(\delta^{2}-x^{2}\right)^{\rho}+x^{2} & |x|<\delta\end{cases}
$$

where $\delta$ is a positive design parameter. It can be shown that $s(x)$ is $(\rho-1)$-th order differentiable and bounded below for $|x|<\delta$. Based on $s(x)$, a function $H\left(z_{1}\right)$ is defined as follows

$$
H\left(z_{1}\right)=\frac{\Phi_{a}(y)}{s\left(z_{1}\right)}= \begin{cases}\frac{\Phi_{a}(y)}{z_{1}^{2}} & \left|z_{1}\right| \geq \delta  \tag{40}\\ \frac{\Phi_{a}(y)}{\left(\delta^{2}-z_{1}^{2}\right)^{\rho}+z_{1}^{2}} & \left|z_{1}\right|<\delta\end{cases}
$$

Clearly $H$ is well defined and for $\left|z_{1}\right|<\delta, H$ is bounded as $s\left(z_{1}\right)$ is bounded below.
Remark 2 In [3], a similar function to (40) was used to design controllers for disturbance decoupling. However, the function is undefined at the time instants when $y=y_{r}$. Thus, the controller presented is undefined at these time instants.

From (36) and (40) it can be shown that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{V}_{\epsilon} \leq-2\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2}+\frac{1}{2} s^{4}\|P H\|^{4}+\frac{1}{2}\|d(t)\|^{4} . \tag{41}
\end{equation*}
$$

We now illustrate the backstepping design procedures using Nussbaum gain with details given for the first two steps.

Step 1 It follows from (21) and (37) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{z}_{1}=b_{m} v_{m, 2}+\beta+\bar{\omega}^{\mathrm{T}} \theta+\epsilon_{2}+d(t) \Phi_{a 1}(y)-\dot{y}_{r} . \tag{42}
\end{equation*}
$$

Without using the sign of $b_{m}$, the following virtual control law $\alpha_{1}$ is designed

$$
\begin{align*}
\alpha_{1} & =N(\chi) \bar{\alpha}_{1} e^{-f t},  \tag{43}\\
N(\chi) & =\exp \left(\chi^{2}\right) \cos \frac{\pi}{2} \chi, \tag{44}
\end{align*}
$$

where $f$ is a positive real design parameter, $\chi$ is generated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\chi}=z_{1} \bar{\alpha}_{1} \tag{45}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\bar{\alpha}_{1}$ is chosen to be

$$
\begin{align*}
\bar{\alpha}_{1}= & \left(c_{1}+l_{1}+\left(e_{1}^{\mathrm{T}} \hat{\theta}\right)^{2}\right) z_{1}+\beta+\bar{\omega}^{\mathrm{T}} \hat{\theta}-\dot{y}_{r} \\
& +z_{1} h^{2} \hat{q}+\frac{1}{4} z_{1}\left\|\Phi_{a 1}(y)\right\|^{2}+\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{8 l_{i}} z_{1} s^{3}\left(z_{1}\right)\|P H\|^{4}, \tag{46}
\end{align*}
$$

where $c_{1}$ and $l_{1}$ are two positive real design parameters, $\hat{\theta}$ and $\hat{q}$ denote the estimates of $\theta$ and $q$. Notice that

$$
\begin{equation*}
b_{m} v_{m, 2}=b_{m}\left(z_{2}+\alpha_{1}\right)=\hat{b}_{m} z_{2}+b_{m} \alpha_{1}+\tilde{b}_{m} z_{2}, \tag{47}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\tilde{b}_{m}=b_{m}-\hat{b}_{m}, \hat{b}_{m}$ is the first element of $\hat{\theta}$, i.e. $\hat{b}_{m}=e_{1}^{\mathrm{T}} \hat{\theta}$. Then from (42) and (46) we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{z}_{1}-\bar{\alpha}_{1}= & -\left(c_{1}+l_{1}+\hat{b}_{m}^{2}\right) z_{1}+\left(\bar{\omega}^{\mathrm{T}}+z_{2} e_{1}^{\mathrm{T}}\right) \tilde{\theta}+\epsilon_{a, 2}+\epsilon_{b, 2}-z_{1} h^{2} \hat{q}+\hat{b}_{m} z_{2}+b_{m} \alpha_{1} \\
& +d(t) \Phi_{a 1}(y)-\frac{1}{4} z_{1}\left\|\Phi_{a 1}(y)\right\|^{2}-\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{8 l_{i}} z_{1} s^{3}\|P H\|^{4}, \tag{48}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\tilde{\theta}=\theta-\hat{\theta}, \epsilon_{a, 2}$ and $\epsilon_{b, 2}$ represent the second entry of $\epsilon_{a}$ and $\epsilon_{b}$. To proceed, we define the Lyapunov function

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{1}=\frac{1}{2} z_{1}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \tilde{\theta}^{T} \Gamma^{-1} \tilde{\theta}+\frac{1}{2} \tilde{q}^{2}+\frac{1}{4 l_{1}} V_{\epsilon}, \tag{49}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Gamma$ is a positive definite matrix of $R^{(n+2) \times(n+2)}$. Then the derivative of $V_{1}$ along with (41), (43) and (48) is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{V}_{1}= & z_{1}\left(\dot{z}_{1}-\bar{\alpha}_{1}\right)+z_{1} \bar{\alpha}_{1}+\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1}(\dot{\theta}-\dot{\hat{\theta}})+\tilde{q} \dot{\tilde{q}}+\frac{1}{4 l_{1}} \dot{V}_{\epsilon} \\
\leq & -\left(c_{1}+\hat{b}_{m}^{2}\right) z_{1}^{2}+\hat{b}_{m} z_{1} z_{2}+\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1}\left(\tau_{1}-\dot{\hat{\theta}}\right)-l_{1} z_{1}^{2}+\epsilon_{a, 2} z_{1}-\frac{1}{2 l_{1}}\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2} \\
& +\epsilon_{b, 2} z_{1}-\tilde{q} \dot{\hat{q}}-h^{2} \hat{q} z_{1}^{2}+d(t) \Phi_{a 1}(y) z_{1}-\frac{1}{4} z_{1}^{2}\left\|\Phi_{a 1}(y)\right\|^{2}+b_{m} \alpha_{1} z_{1}+\bar{\alpha}_{1} z_{1}  \tag{50}\\
& +\frac{1}{8 l_{1}} s^{4}\|P H\|^{4}-\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{8 l_{i}} z_{1}^{2} s^{3}\|P H\|^{4}+\frac{1}{8 l_{1}}\|d(t)\|^{4}+\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \dot{\theta}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau_{1}=\Gamma z_{1}\left(\bar{\omega}+z_{2} e_{1}\right) \tag{51}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here we know that

$$
\epsilon_{b, 2} z_{1}-h^{2} \hat{q} z_{1}^{2} \leq h q\left|z_{1}\right|-h^{2} \hat{q} z_{1}^{2} \leq q\left(h^{2} z_{1}^{2}+1 / 4\right)-h^{2} \hat{q} z_{1}^{2}=h^{2} \tilde{q} z_{1}^{2}+\frac{q}{4}
$$

Then we can get

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{V}_{1} \leq & \left(b_{m} N(\chi) e^{-f t}+1\right) \dot{\chi}-c_{1} z_{1}^{2}+\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1}\left(\tau_{1}-\dot{\hat{\theta}}\right) \\
& +\tilde{q}\left(\iota_{1}-\dot{\hat{q}}\right)-\frac{1}{4 l_{1}}\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2}+\frac{1}{4} z_{2}^{2}+M_{1} \tag{52}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
\iota_{1} & =h^{2} z_{1}^{2}  \tag{53}\\
M_{1} & =\|d(t)\|^{2}+\frac{1}{8 l_{1}}\|d(t)\|^{4}-\sum_{i=2}^{\rho} \frac{1}{8 l_{i}} s^{4}\|P H\|^{4}+\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \dot{\theta}+\frac{1}{4} q+\bar{N}  \tag{54}\\
\bar{N} & = \begin{cases}0, & \left|z_{1}\right| \geq \delta \\
\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{8 l_{i}}\left(\delta^{2}-z_{1}^{2}\right)^{\rho} s^{3}\|P H\|^{4}, & \left|z_{1}\right|<\delta\end{cases} \tag{55}
\end{align*}
$$

From (40) we know that $\bar{N}$ is bounded.
Step 2 Now, we evaluate the dynamics of the second state $z_{2}$. Differentiating (38) for $i=2$ and using (22), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{z}_{2}=v_{m, 3}-k_{2} v_{m, 1}-\dot{\alpha}_{1} \tag{56}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $\alpha_{1}$ is a function of $y, \hat{\theta}, \hat{q}, \xi, \Xi, \lambda, \chi$ and $y_{r}$ and following from similar analysis to [7] by substituting (38) with $i=3$ into (56), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{z}_{2}=\alpha_{2}-\beta_{2}-\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y}\left(\epsilon_{2}+\omega^{\mathrm{T}} \tilde{\theta}+d(t) \Phi_{a 1}(y)\right)+z_{3}-\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y} \omega^{\mathrm{T}} \hat{\theta}-\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{\theta}} \dot{\hat{\theta}}-\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{q}} \dot{\hat{q}} \tag{57}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\beta_{2} \triangleq k_{2} v_{m, 1}+\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y} \beta+\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \Pi} \dot{\Pi}+\sum_{j=1}^{m+1} \frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \lambda_{j}}\left(-k_{j} \lambda_{1}+\lambda_{j+1}\right)+\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y_{r}} \dot{y}_{r}+\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \chi} \dot{\chi} \tag{58}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Pi=\left[\xi^{\mathrm{T}}, \operatorname{Vec}(\Xi)^{\mathrm{T}}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}$. Define the Lyapunov function and choose the virtual control for this step as

$$
\begin{align*}
V_{2}= & V_{1}+\frac{1}{2} z_{2}^{2}+\frac{1}{4 l_{2}} V_{\epsilon},  \tag{59}\\
\alpha_{2}= & -\left(c_{2}+\frac{1}{4}\right) z_{2}+\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y} \omega^{\mathrm{T}} \hat{\theta}-z_{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{\theta}}\right\|^{2}\left\|\tau_{2}\right\|^{2}-z_{2} h^{2} \hat{q}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y}\right\|^{2}  \tag{60}\\
& -z_{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{q}}\right\|^{2} \iota_{2}^{2}-l_{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y}\right\|^{2} z_{2}+\beta_{2}-\frac{z_{2}}{4}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y} \Phi_{a 1}(y)\right\|^{2}, \\
\tau_{2}= & \tau_{1}-\Gamma \frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y} \omega z_{2},  \tag{61}\\
\iota_{2}= & \iota_{1}+h^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial 21}\right\|^{2} z_{2}^{2} . \tag{62}
\end{align*}
$$

Using (52), (59) and (60), we have that

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{V}_{2} \leq & \dot{V}_{1}+z_{2} \dot{z}_{2}+\frac{1}{4 l_{2}} \dot{V}_{\epsilon} \\
\leq & -\sum_{i=1}^{2} c_{i} z_{i}^{2}+\left(b_{m} N(\chi) e^{-f t}+1\right) \dot{\chi}+z_{2} z_{3}-\sum_{i=1}^{2} \frac{1}{4 l_{i}}\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2}+M_{2} \\
& +\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1}\left(\tau_{1}-\dot{\hat{\theta}}\right)-z_{2} \frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y} \omega^{\mathrm{T}} \tilde{\theta}+z_{2}^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{\theta}}\right\|^{2}\|\dot{\hat{\theta}}\|^{2}-z_{2}^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{\theta}}\right\|^{2}\left\|\tau_{2}\right\|^{2} \\
& +\tilde{q}\left(\iota_{1}-\dot{\hat{q}}\right)+h^{2} \tilde{q}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial y}\right\|^{2} z_{2}^{2}+z_{2}^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{q}}\right\|^{2} \dot{\hat{q}}^{2}-z_{2}^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{q}}\right\|^{2} \iota^{2}  \tag{63}\\
\leq & -\sum_{i=1}^{2} c_{i} z_{i}^{2}+\left(b_{m} N(\chi) e^{-f t}+1\right) \dot{\chi}+z_{2} z_{3}+\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1}\left(\tau_{2}-\dot{\hat{\theta}}\right)+\tilde{q}\left(\iota_{2}-\dot{\hat{q}}\right)+M_{2} \\
& +z_{2}^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{\theta}}\right\|^{2}\left(\|\dot{\hat{\theta}}\|^{2}-\left\|\tau_{2}\right\|^{2}\right)+z_{2}^{2}\left(\frac{\partial \alpha_{1}}{\partial \hat{q}}\right)^{2}\left(\dot{\hat{q}}^{2}-\iota_{2}^{2}\right)-\sum_{i=1}^{2} \frac{1}{4 l_{i}}\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2},
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{2}=\sum_{i=1}^{2} \frac{1}{8 l_{i}}\|d(t)\|^{4}+2\|d(t)\|^{2}-\sum_{i=3}^{\rho} \frac{1}{8 l_{i}} s^{4}\|P H\|^{4}+\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \dot{\theta}+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2} q+\bar{N} \tag{64}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 3 Note that $M_{2}$ contains $s^{4}\|P H\|^{4}$ and this term may not be bounded. As seen from our analysis, $\frac{1}{8 l_{2}} s^{4}\|P H\|^{4}$ disappears in $M_{2}$ due to the use of $V_{\epsilon}$ at step 2. If we use $V_{\epsilon}$ at each step, this term will disappear in $M_{\rho}$ on the last step.

Step $i \quad(i=3, \ldots, \rho) \quad$ These steps are similar to those in [7]. Define

$$
\begin{align*}
V_{i}= & V_{i-1}+\frac{1}{2} z_{i}^{2}+\frac{1}{4 l_{i}} V_{\epsilon},  \tag{65}\\
\alpha_{i}= & -c_{i} z_{i}-l_{i}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y}\right\|^{2} z_{i}-z_{i-1}+\beta_{i}+\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y} \omega^{\mathrm{T}} \hat{\theta}-\frac{z_{i}}{4}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y} \Phi_{a 1}(y)\right\|^{2} \\
& -z_{i}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial \hat{\theta}}\right\|^{2}\left\|\tau_{i}\right\|^{2}+\left(\sum_{k=2}^{i-1} z_{k}^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{k-1}}{\partial \hat{\theta}}\right\|^{2}\right)\left(\tau_{i}+\tau_{i-1}\right)^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma \frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y} \omega  \tag{66}\\
& -z_{i}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial \hat{q}}\right\|^{2} \iota_{i}^{2}-\left(\sum_{k=2}^{i-1} z_{k}^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{k-1}}{\partial \hat{q}}\right\|^{2}\right)\left(\iota_{i}+\iota_{i-1}\right)^{\mathrm{T}} h^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y}\right\|^{2} z_{i} \\
& -z_{i} h^{2} \hat{q}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y}\right\|^{2}, \\
\tau_{i}= & \tau_{i-1}-\Gamma \frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y} \omega z_{i},  \tag{67}\\
\iota_{i}= & \iota_{i-1}+h^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y}\right\|^{2} z_{i}^{2}, \tag{68}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\beta_{i} \triangleq k_{i} v_{m, 1}+\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y} \beta+\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial \Pi} \dot{\Pi}+\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y_{r}} \dot{y}_{r}+\sum_{j=1}^{m+1} \frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial \lambda_{j}}\left(-k_{j} \lambda_{1}+\lambda_{j+1}\right)+\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial \chi} \dot{\chi} \tag{69}
\end{equation*}
$$

Also note that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\tau_{i}\right\|^{2} & =\tau_{i}^{\mathrm{T}} \tau_{i}=\tau_{i}^{\mathrm{T}} \tau_{i}-\tau_{i-1}^{\mathrm{T}} \tau_{i-1}+\tau_{i-1}^{\mathrm{T}} \tau_{i-1}=\left(\tau_{i}+\tau_{i-1}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}\left(\tau_{i}-\tau_{i-1}\right)+\tau_{i-1}^{\mathrm{T}} \tau_{i-1} \\
& =-\left(\tau_{i}+\tau_{i-1}\right)^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma \frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y} \omega z_{i}+\tau_{i-1}^{\mathrm{T}} \tau_{i-1},  \tag{70}\\
\iota_{i}^{2} & =\left(\iota_{i}+\iota_{i-1}\right)^{\mathrm{T}} h^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{i-1}}{\partial y}\right\|^{2} z_{i}^{2}+\iota_{i-1}^{2} .
\end{align*}
$$

Then the actual adaptive controller is obtained and given by

$$
\begin{align*}
u(t) & =\alpha_{\rho}-v_{m, \rho+1},  \tag{71}\\
\dot{\hat{\theta}} & =\operatorname{Proj}\left(\tau_{\rho}\right),  \tag{72}\\
\dot{\hat{q}} & =\operatorname{Proj}\left(\iota_{\rho}\right), \tag{73}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\operatorname{Proj}(\cdot)$ is a smooth projection operation to ensure the estimates belong to compact sets for all time. Such an operation can be found in [7].

Remark 4 Note that the designed tuning functions are different from existing schemes in [7] as the projection operations are used in the parameter estimators.

By using the properties that $-\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \operatorname{Proj}(\tau) \leq-\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \tau$ and $\operatorname{Proj}(\tau)^{\mathrm{T}} \operatorname{Proj}(\tau) \leq$ $\tau^{\mathrm{T}} \tau$ the final Lyapunov function $V_{\rho}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{V}_{\rho} \leq & -\sum_{k=1}^{\rho} c_{k} z_{k}^{2}+\left(b_{m} N(\chi) e^{-f t}+1\right) \dot{\chi}+M_{\rho}-\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{4 l_{i}}\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2} \\
& +\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1}\left(\tau_{\rho}-\operatorname{Proj}\left(\tau_{\rho}\right)\right)+\left(\sum_{k=2}^{\rho} z_{k}^{2}\left\|\frac{\partial \alpha_{k-1}}{\partial \hat{\theta}}\right\|^{2}\right)\left(\operatorname{Proj}\left(\tau_{\rho}\right)^{\mathrm{T}} \operatorname{Proj}\left(\tau_{\rho}\right)-\left\|\tau_{\rho}\right\|^{2}\right)  \tag{74}\\
& +\tilde{q}\left(\iota_{\rho}-\operatorname{Proj}\left(\iota_{\rho}\right)\right)+\left(\sum_{k=2}^{\rho} z_{k}^{2}\left(\frac{\partial \alpha_{k-1}}{\partial \hat{q}}\right)^{2}\right)\left(\operatorname{Proj}\left(\iota_{\rho}\right)^{2}-\iota_{\rho}^{2}\right) \\
\leq & -\sum_{k=1}^{\rho} c_{k} z_{k}^{2}+b_{m} N(\chi) e^{-f t} \dot{\chi}+\dot{\chi}+M_{\rho}-\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{4 l_{i}}\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{\rho}=\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{8 l_{i}}\|d(t)\|^{4}+\rho\|d(t)\|^{2}+\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \dot{\theta}+\frac{\rho-1}{2}+\frac{\rho}{4} q+\bar{N} \tag{75}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating both sides of (74) over the interval $[0, t]$ gives

$$
\begin{align*}
\int_{0}^{t} \dot{V}_{\rho} e^{f \tau} d \tau \leq & -\int_{0}^{t} \sum_{k=1}^{\rho} c_{k} z_{k}^{2} e^{f \tau} d \tau+\int_{0}^{t} b_{m} N(\chi) \dot{\chi} d \tau+\int_{0}^{t} \dot{\chi} e^{f \tau} d \tau  \tag{76}\\
& +\int_{0}^{t} M_{\rho} e^{f \tau} d \tau-\int_{0}^{t} \sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{4 l_{i}}\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2} e^{f \tau} d \tau
\end{align*}
$$

Note that $V_{\epsilon} \leq\|P\|\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2}$. Then

$$
\begin{align*}
V_{\rho} & =\sum_{k=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{2} z_{k}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \tilde{\theta}+\frac{1}{2} \tilde{q}^{2}+\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{4 l_{i}} V_{\epsilon}  \tag{77}\\
& \leq \sum_{k=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{2} z_{k}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \tilde{\theta}+\frac{1}{2} \tilde{q}^{2}+\sum_{i=1}^{\rho} \frac{1}{4 l_{i}}\|P\|\left\|\epsilon_{a}\right\|^{2}
\end{align*}
$$

This yields

$$
\begin{align*}
0 \leq & V_{\rho}(t) \leq V_{\rho}(0)+e^{-f t} \int_{0}^{t} b_{m} N(\chi) \dot{\chi} d \tau+\int_{0}^{t} \dot{\chi} e^{-f(t-\tau)} d \tau \\
& \left.+\int_{0}^{t} \frac{f}{2}\left(\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \tilde{\theta}\right)+\tilde{q}^{2}\right) e^{-f(t-\tau)} d \tau+\int_{0}^{t} M_{\rho} e^{-f(t-\tau)} d \tau \tag{78}
\end{align*}
$$

where $f=\min \left\{\frac{1}{\|P\|_{2}}, 2 c_{1}, 2 c_{2}, \ldots, 2 c_{\rho},\right\}>0$. Due to the utilization of projection operations for $\hat{\theta}$ and $\hat{q}$, the boundedness of $\tilde{\theta}$ and $\tilde{q}$ can be guaranteed. Together with the boundedness of $d(t), q$ and $\dot{\theta}$, the boundedness of $M_{\rho}$ and

$$
\int_{0}^{t} \frac{f}{2}\left(\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \tilde{\theta}+\tilde{q}^{2}\right) e^{-f(t-\tau)} d \tau+\int_{0}^{t} M_{\rho} e^{-f(t-\tau)} d \tau
$$

can be guaranteed. Thus by comparing with (4), $f_{0}$ is selected as the upper bound of

$$
V_{\rho}(0)+\int_{0}^{t} \frac{f}{2}\left(\tilde{\theta}^{\mathrm{T}} \Gamma^{-1} \tilde{\theta}+\tilde{q}^{2}\right) e^{-f(t-\tau)} d \tau+\int_{0}^{t} M_{\rho} e^{-f(t-\tau)} d \tau, g_{1}=b_{m}
$$

and $f_{1}=f$. Using Lemma 1 , we can conclude that $V_{\rho}(t)$ and $\chi(t)$, hence $z_{i},(i=$ $1, \ldots, \rho)$ are bounded. Finally, the stability of the whole system can be established as in [7].

To conclude this section, the results established are presented in the following theorem.
Theorem 1 Consider the uncertain time-varying nonlinear system (1) satisfying Assumptions 1-4. With the application of the controller (71) and the parameter updating laws (72) and (73), the resulting closed loop system is BIBO stable.

## 4 A Simulation Example

In this section, the proposed design method is illustrated on the following simple linear system

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{x}_{1}(t) & =x_{2}(t)+\theta_{1}(t) y(t), \\
\dot{x}_{2}(t) & =b(t) u(t)+d(t),  \tag{79}\\
y(t) & =x_{1}(t),
\end{align*}
$$

where $\theta_{1}(t)=1+\sin (t), b(t)=1+\exp (-t), d(t)=\cos (t)$ are unknown timevarying parameters in the controller design. The objective is to control the system output $y(t)$ to follow a desired trajectory $y_{r}(t)=\sin (t)+\sin (2 t)$. The filters are implemented as

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{\xi} & =A_{0} \xi+k y,  \tag{80}\\
\dot{\lambda} & =A_{0} \lambda+e_{2} u,  \tag{81}\\
\dot{\Xi} & =A_{0} \Xi+\Psi, \quad \Psi=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
y & 0
\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{T}},  \tag{82}\\
A_{0} & =\left[\begin{array}{ll}
-k_{1} & 1 \\
-k_{2} & 0
\end{array}\right] . \tag{83}
\end{align*}
$$

The control law $\alpha_{1}$ in (43), $u(t)$ in (71), and the parameter update law $\hat{\theta}$ in (72) are used with $\theta=\left[\begin{array}{ll}b & \theta_{1}\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}$. The design parameters are chosen as $c_{1}=c_{2}=5, \Gamma=I_{2}, l_{1}=l_{2}=2$, $k_{1}=6, k_{2}=8$. The initials $y(0)=0.1, \hat{\theta}(0)=\left[\begin{array}{ll}0.2 & 0.5\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{T}}$ and others are set to zero. The simulation results presented in the Figure 4.1 show the system output $y(t)$ and the


Figure 4.1. Output $y(--)$ and trajectory $y_{r}(-)$.


Figure 4.2. Control signal $u(t)$.
desired trajectory signal $y_{r}(t)$. Figure 4.2 shows the control signal $u(t)$. Clearly, these simulation results verify that our proposed scheme is effective.

## 5 Conclusion

In this paper, a scheme is proposed to design an adaptive output-feedback controller for uncertain time-varying nonlinear systems with unknown sign of high-frequency gains in the presence of disturbances. No growth conditions on system nonlinearities are imposed. In the design, certain well defined functions are used to cancel the effects of disturbances.

To deal with the time variation problem, an estimator is used to estimate the bound of the variation rates. Furthermore, the overparametrization problem is also solved by using the concept of tuning functions. It is shown that the controller obtained by the proposed design scheme can make the whole adaptive control system stable. Simulations performed on a simple system also verify the effectiveness of the proposed scheme.

## References

[1] Chen, Y.H. Optimal design of robust for uncertain systems: a fuzzy approach. Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory 1(2) (2001) 133-144.
[2] Ding, Z. Global adaptive output feedback stabilization of nonlinear system of any relative degree with unknown high frequency gains. IEEE Trans. Automat. Control 43 (1998) 1442-1446.
[3] Ding, Z. Adaptive asymptotic tracking of nonlinear output feedback systems under unknown bounded disturbances. Syst. Sci. 24 (1998) 47-59.
[4] Ding, Z. A flat-zone modification for robust adaptive control of nonlinear output feedback systems with unknown high-frequency gains. IEEE Trans. Automat. Control $\mathbf{4 7}(2)$ (2002) 358-363.
[5] Feng, Z.H. Robustness analysis of a class of discrete-time systems with applications to neural networks. Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory 3(1) (2003) 75-87.
[6] Ge, S.S. and Wang, J. Robust adaptive stabilization for time-varying uncertain nonlinear systems with unknown control coefficients. In.: Proc. of 41 st IEEE CDC, 2002, P.39523957.
[7] Krstic, M., Kanellakopoulos, I. and Kokotovic, P.V. Nonlinear and Adaptive Control Design. Wiley, New York, 1995.
[8] Marino, R. and Tomei, P. Nonlinear Control Design: Geometric, Adaptive and Robust. Prentice Hall, New York, 1995.
[9] Marino, R. and Tomei, P. Adaptive control of linear time-varying systems. Automatica 39 (2003) 651-659.
[10] Mudgett, D.R. and Morse, A.S. Adaptive stabilization of linear systems with unknown high frequency gains. IEEE Trans. Automat. Control 30 (1985) 549-554.
[11] Zhang, Y. Wen, C. and Soh, Y.C. Adaptive backstepping control design for systems with unknown high-frequency gain. IEEE Trans. Automat. Control 45 (2000) 2350-2354.

# Stability of Nonautonomous Neutral Variable Delay Difference Equation 

Hai-Long King ${ }^{1}$, Xiao-Zhu Zhong ${ }^{1}$, Man Shirr ${ }^{2 *}$, Jing-Cui Lang ${ }^{1}$ and Dong-Hua Wang ${ }^{1}$<br>${ }^{1}$ School of Science, Yanshan University, Qinghuangdao 066004, China<br>${ }^{2}$ School of Information Science, Kyushu Tokai University, 9-1-1, Toroku, Kumamoto 862-8652, Japan

Received: March 12, 2005; Revised: June 9, 2005


#### Abstract

This paper studies the stability of a class of nonautonomous neutral delay difference equation. The case of several variable delays is mainly considered, and the sufficient conditions of uniform stability and uniform asymptotical stability are obtained. Some results with a constant delay in the literature are extended and improved.


Keywords: Nonautonomous; neutral difference equations; stability.
Mathematics Subject Classification (2000): 35D05, 35E05.

## 1 Introduction

Consider the nonautonomous neutral variable delay difference equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta(x(n)-c x(n-k))+f\left(n, x\left(n-l_{1}(n)\right), \ldots x\left(n-l_{m}(n)\right)=0, \quad n \in N\right. \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $c \in(-1,1) ; k \in N ;\left\{l_{i}(n)\right\}$ is a positive integer sequence and satisfies $l_{i}(n) \leq l$, $i=1, \ldots, m, n \in N ; l$ is a given positive integer, $f\left(n, x_{1}, \ldots x_{m}\right): N \times R^{m} \rightarrow R$, and $f(n, 0, \ldots 0)$ satisfies $f\left(n, x_{1}, \ldots x_{m}\right) \equiv 0, n \in N$.

[^6]In recent years there are lots of researches on stability of special-formed zero solution to the equation (1) (see [1-9]). In 1999, Z. Zhou and J.S. Yu studied the equation

$$
\Delta(x(n)-c x(n-k))+h(n, x(n-l))=0
$$

where $c \in(-1,1) ; k \in N ; l \in N ; f(n, x): N \times R \rightarrow R$ and $f(n, 0)$ satisfies $f(n, 0) \equiv 0$, $n \in N$, and obtained a sufficient condition of the stability and asymptotical stability for zero solution to this equation [7]. It will be more practical for the fact that if the function $f(n, x)$ is replaced by function $f\left(n, x_{1}, \ldots x_{m}\right)$ and the constant delay is replaced by the variable delay. Based on the above-mentioned consideration, we studied the stability of equation (1) and discovered that the concerned conclusion can be extended to the more general equation (1) and obtained a sufficient condition of the stability and asymptotical stability of equation (1).

For simplicity, the basic conceptions and symbols which occur in the paper will be introduced as follows: " $\Delta$ " stands for the forward difference operator, say, $\Delta y(n)=$ $y(n+1)-y(n) ; Z$ is the integer number set; $R$ is the real number set. Suppose that $a \in Z$, let $N(a)=\{a, a+1, \ldots\}, N=N(0)$. For any given $a, b \in Z$ and $a \leq b$, let $N(a, b)=\{a, a+1, \ldots, b\}$.

Definition 1.1 Sequence $\{x(n)\}$ is said to be the solution of equation (1) if for a certain $n_{0} \in N$, the sequence is defined on the $N\left(n_{0}-r\right)$, where $r=\max \{l, k\}$ and satisfies equation (1). Obviously, equation (1) has zero solution permanently.

Definition 1.2 If for any $\varepsilon>0$ and $n_{0} \in N$, there exists a $\delta\left(\varepsilon, n_{0}\right)>0$, such that when $\left|x\left(n_{0}+j\right)\right|<\delta, j \in N(-r, 0)$, the solution of equation (1) satisfies $|x(n)|<\varepsilon$, $n \in N\left(n_{0}\right)$, then the zero solution of equation (1) is said to be stable. If $\delta$ can be chosen independent of $n_{0}$, then the zero solution of equation (1) is said to be uniformly stable.

Definition 1.3 The zero solution of equation (1) is said to be attractive, if for any $n_{0} \in N$, there exists a $\delta\left(\varepsilon, n_{0}\right)>0$, such that when $\left|\left|x\left(n_{0}+j\right)\right|<\delta, j \in N(-r, 0)\right.$, the solution of equation (1) satisfies $\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} x(n)=0$, then the zero solution of equation (1) is said to be attractive. If $\delta$ can be chosen independent of $n_{0}$, the zero solution of equation (1) is said to be uniformly attractive.

Definition 1.4 The zero solution of equation (1) is said to be uniformly asymptotically stable, if its zero solution is uniformly stable and uniformly attractive.

Let

$$
\begin{align*}
& n-\alpha(n)=\min \left\{n-l_{i}(n): x\left(n-l_{i}(n)\right)=\max \left\{x\left(n-l_{1}(n)\right), \ldots, x\left(n-l_{m}(n)\right)\right\}\right\},  \tag{2}\\
& n-\beta(n)=\min \left\{n-l_{i}(n): x\left(n-l_{i}(n)\right)=\min \left\{x\left(n-l_{1}(n)\right), \ldots, x\left(n-l_{m}(n)\right)\right\}\right\}, \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

$S$ is a real number sequence, for any $x=\{x(1), \ldots, x(n), \ldots\} \in S$, let $\|x\|=\sup \{|x(i)|\}$, for a given $H>0$, denote

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{H}=\{x \in S:\|x\|<H\} \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $m>n$, we assume that $C_{n}^{m}=0$.

## 2 Main Results and Proofs

Theorem 2.1 Suppose that there exists a nonnegative real number sequence $\{p(n)\}$, such that
(1) for positive constant $H$ and any $x \in S_{H}$, when $n \in N$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(n) x(n-\beta(n)) \leq f\left(n, x\left(n-l_{1}(n)\right), \ldots x\left(n-l_{m}(n)\right)\right) \leq p(n) x(n-\alpha(n)) \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

(2) the following inequalities are satisfied

$$
\begin{align*}
& 2|c|(2-|c|)+\sum_{i=n-\alpha(n)}^{n} p(i)<\frac{3}{2}+\frac{(1-2|c|)^{2}}{2(l+1)}, \quad n \in N  \tag{6}\\
& 2|c|(2-|c|)+\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n} p(i)<\frac{3}{2}+\frac{(1-2|c|)^{2}}{2(l+1)}, \quad n \in N . \tag{7}
\end{align*}
$$

Then the zero solution of equation (1) is uniformly stable.
Theorem 2.2 Suppose that there exists a nonnegative real number sequence $\{p(n)\}$, such that
(1) for positive constant $H$ and any $x \in S_{H}$, when $n \in N$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
p(n) x(n-\beta(n)) \leq f\left(n, x\left(n-l_{1}(n)\right), \ldots, x\left(n-l_{m}(n)\right)\right) \leq p(n) x(n-\alpha(n)) \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{gather*}
\sum_{n=1}^{+\infty} p(n)=+\infty  \tag{2}\\
2|c|(2-|c|)+\sum_{i=n-\alpha(n)}^{n} p(i)<\frac{3}{2}+\frac{(1-2|c|)^{2}}{2(l+1)}, \quad n \in N  \tag{10}\\
2|c|(2-|c|)+\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n} p(i)<\frac{3}{2}+\frac{(1-2|c|)^{2}}{2(l+1)}, \quad n \in N .
\end{gather*}
$$

Then the zero solution of equation (1) is uniformly asymptotically stable.
Proof of Theorem 2.1 For any $0<\varepsilon<H, n_{0} \in N$, there is a $\delta>0$, when the solution $\{x(n)\}$ to the equation satisfies $\left|x\left(n_{0}+i\right)\right|<\delta, i=-r,-r+1, \ldots, 0$, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
|x(n)|<\varepsilon, \quad n \in N\left(n_{0}\right) \tag{12}
\end{equation*}
$$

We select

$$
\delta=\frac{(1-|c|)}{(1+|c|)(2|c|+3)^{3 r}} \varepsilon
$$

In the following, we will prove that when $n \in N\left(n_{0}+1, n_{0}+3 r\right)$, (12) holds. In fact, from(1), we can see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|x\left(n_{0}+1\right)\right|= & \mid c x\left(n_{0}+1-k\right)-c x\left(n_{0}-k\right)+x\left(n_{0}\right) \\
& -f\left(n_{0}, x\left(n_{0}-l_{1}\left(n_{0}\right)\right), \ldots, x\left(n_{0}-l_{m}\left(n_{0}\right)\right)\right) \mid \\
< & \left(1+2|c|+p\left(n_{0}\right)\right) \delta \leq(2|c|+3) \delta<\varepsilon<H
\end{aligned}
$$

Generally, when $i \in N(1,3 r)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x\left(n_{0}+i\right)\right|<(2|c|+3)^{i} \delta<\varepsilon<H . \tag{13}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the following, we will prove that when $n \in N\left(n_{0}+3 r+1\right)$, (12) holds. In fact, otherwise, there must be a $n_{1} \in N\left(n_{0}+3 r+1\right)$ such that $\left|x\left(n_{1}\right)\right| \geq \varepsilon$ and when $n \in N\left(n_{0}, n_{1}-1\right)$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
|x(n)|<\varepsilon . \tag{14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Suppose $x\left(n_{1}\right)>0$, we then have $x\left(n_{1}\right) \geq \varepsilon$. Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
y(n)=x(n)-c x(n-k), \quad n \in N\left(n_{0}\right), \tag{15}
\end{equation*}
$$

then

$$
\begin{equation*}
y\left(n_{1}\right)=x\left(n_{1}\right)-c x\left(n_{1}-k\right) \geq(1-|c|) \varepsilon . \tag{16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because

$$
y\left(n_{0}+3 r\right) \leq\left|x\left(n_{0}+3 r\right)\right|+|c|\left|x\left(n_{0}+3 r-k\right)\right|<(1+|c|)(2|c|+3)^{3 r} \delta=(1-|c|) \varepsilon
$$

then there is a $n^{*} \in N\left(n_{0}+3 r+1, n_{1}\right)$, such that

$$
\begin{gather*}
y\left(n^{*}-1\right)<(1-|c|) \varepsilon, \\
y\left(n^{*}\right) \geq(1-|c|) \varepsilon, \tag{17}
\end{gather*}
$$

and when $n \in N\left(n^{*}+1, n_{1}\right)$, we have $y(n) \geq(1-|c|) \varepsilon$, thus we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta y\left(n^{*}-1\right)>0 \tag{18}
\end{equation*}
$$

From (6) we can see that $|c|<\frac{1}{2}$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(n^{*}\right)=y\left(n^{*}\right)+c x\left(n^{*}-k\right) \geq y\left(n^{*}\right)-|c| \varepsilon \geq(1-2|c|) \varepsilon . \tag{19}
\end{equation*}
$$

From (5) and (18) we can see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& p\left(n^{*}-1\right) x\left(n^{*}-1-\beta\left(n^{*}-1\right)\right) \\
& \quad \leq f\left(n^{*}-1, x\left(n^{*}-1-l_{1}\left(n^{*}-1\right)\right), \ldots, x\left(n^{*}-1-l_{m}\left(n^{*}-1\right)\right)\right)=-\Delta y\left(n^{*}-1\right)<0,
\end{aligned}
$$

then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(n^{*}-1-\beta\left(n^{*}-1\right)\right)<0 . \tag{20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore from (19) and (20) we can see that there exists $n_{2} \in N\left(n^{*}-\beta\left(n^{*}-1\right), n^{*}\right)$ and $\xi \in(0,1)$, such that $x\left(n_{2}-1\right)<0$. And when $n \in N\left(n_{2}, n^{*}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{gather*}
x(n)>0,  \tag{21}\\
x\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\xi\left(x\left(n_{2}-x\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right)=0,\right. \tag{22}
\end{gather*}
$$

then from (22) and (15), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\left[y\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\xi\left(y\left(n_{2}-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right)\right]=-\left[(1-\xi) x\left(n_{2}-k-1\right)+\xi x\left(n_{2}-k\right)\right] c \leq|c| \varepsilon\right. \tag{23}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\left[y\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\xi\left(y\left(n_{2}-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right]=\left[(1-\xi) x\left(n_{2}-k-1\right)+\xi x\left(n_{2}-k\right)\right] c \leq|c| \varepsilon\right.\right.
$$

that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
y\left(n_{2}-1\right) \leq|c| \varepsilon-\xi\left(y\left(n_{2}-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right) .\right. \tag{24}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the following we will prove that when $n \in N\left(n_{0}+r, n^{*}-1\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
-x(n) \leq\left(2|c|+\sum_{i=n}^{n_{2}-1} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right) \varepsilon . \tag{25}
\end{equation*}
$$

In fact, from (21) we can see that when $n \in N\left(n_{2}, n^{*}-1\right)$, obviously the above inequality holds.

In the following we will prove that when $n \in N\left(n_{0}+r, n_{2}-1\right)$, inequality (25) holds.
From (5) we can see that when $n \in N\left(n_{0}+r\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta y(n) \leq-p(n) x(n-\beta(n)) \tag{26}
\end{equation*}
$$

thus when $n \in N\left(n_{0}+r, n_{2}-1\right)$, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta y(n) \leq p(n) \varepsilon \tag{27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then when $n \in N\left(n_{0}+r, n_{2}-1\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\left[y(n)-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)-\right. & \left.\xi\left(y\left(n_{2}\right)-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right)\right] \\
& =\sum_{i=n}^{n_{2}-2} \Delta y(i)+\xi \Delta y\left(n_{2}-1\right) \leq\left(\sum_{i=n}^{n_{2}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right) \xi
\end{aligned}
$$

From (14) and (15), when $n \in N\left(n_{0}+r, n_{2}-1\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
-x(n)= & -(y(n)+c x(n-k))=-\left[y(n)-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)-\xi\left(y\left(n_{2}\right)\right.\right. \\
& \left.\left.-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right)\right]-\left[y\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\xi\left(y\left(n_{2}\right)-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right)\right]-c x(n-k) \\
\leq & {\left[\sum_{i=n}^{n_{2}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon+2|c| \varepsilon . }
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, inequality (25) holds.
Suppose

$$
\begin{equation*}
\beta=\frac{2}{3}+\frac{(1-2|c|)^{2}}{2(l+1)}-2|c(2-|c|)| . \tag{28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then from (7), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n} p(i)<\beta, \quad n \in N \tag{29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
d=\sum_{i=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)+(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right) \tag{30}
\end{equation*}
$$

There are two situations needed to be contemplated.
Case $1 d \leq 1-2|c|$.
From (24), (25) and (26), we can see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right) & =y\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}-1}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(n) \leq|c| \varepsilon-\xi\left(y\left(n_{2}\right)-y\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}-1}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(n) \\
& =|c| \varepsilon+(1-\xi) \Delta y\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(n) \leq|c| \varepsilon-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right) \\
& \times x\left(n_{2}-1-\beta\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right)-\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n) x(n-\beta(n)) \\
& \leq|c| \varepsilon+(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\left[\sum_{i=n_{2}-1-\beta\left(n_{2}-1\right)}^{n_{2}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)+2|c|\right] \varepsilon \\
& +\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n_{2}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)+2|c|\right] . \varepsilon
\end{aligned}
$$

From (29) we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right)< & |c| \varepsilon+(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\left[\beta-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)+2|c|\right] \varepsilon \\
& +\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n} p(i) \sum_{i=n_{2}}^{n} p(i)-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)+2|c|\right] \varepsilon \\
< & |c| \varepsilon+(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\left[\beta-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right. \\
& +2|c|] \varepsilon+\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[\beta-\sum_{i=n_{2}}^{n} p(i)-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)+2|c|\right] \varepsilon .
\end{aligned}
$$

From (30), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right) & <|c| \varepsilon+\left[(\beta+2|c|) d-(1-\xi)^{2} p^{2}\left(n_{2}-1\right)-\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n) \sum_{i=n_{2}}^{n} p(i)\right. \\
& \left.-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right) \sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\right] \varepsilon=|c| \varepsilon+\left[(\beta+2|c|) d-(1-\xi)^{2} p^{2}\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right. \\
& \left.-\frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\right)^{2}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p^{2}(n)-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right) \sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\right] \varepsilon .
\end{aligned}
$$

Because

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)^{2}+(1-\xi)^{2} p^{2}\left(n_{2}-1\right) & \geq \frac{1}{n^{*}-n_{2}+1}\left(\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)+(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right)^{2} \\
& =\frac{1}{n^{*}-n_{2}+1} d^{2} \geq \frac{1}{l+1} d^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
y\left(n^{*}\right)<\left[|c|+(\beta+2|c|) d-\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2(l+1)}\right) d^{2}\right] \varepsilon \tag{31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because the function $g(x)=|c|+(2|c|+\beta) x-\frac{l+2}{2(l+1)} x^{2}$ is monotonously increasing on the interval $[0,1-2|c|]$, then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right) & <\left[|c|+(\beta+2|c|)(1-2|c|)-\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2(l+1)}\right)(1-2|c|)^{2}\right] \varepsilon \\
& \leq\left[1-|c|-|c|\left(1-2|c|^{2}\right] \leq(1-|c|) \varepsilon\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

which contradicts inequality (17). Therefore, Case 1 is impossible.
Case $2 d>1-2|c|$.
In this case there exists a positive integer $n_{3} \in N\left(n_{2}, n^{*}\right)$, which satisfies

$$
2|c|+\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n) \leq 1 \quad \text { and } \quad 2|c|+\sum_{n=n_{3}-1}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)>1
$$

then there is a $\eta \in(0,1]$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
2|c|+\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)+(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)=1 \tag{32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because

$$
y\left(n^{*}\right)=y\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}-1}^{n_{3}-2} \Delta y(n)+\eta \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+(1-\eta) \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(n)
$$

and making use of (24), we get

$$
y\left(n^{*}\right) \leq|c| \varepsilon+\eta \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+(1-\xi) \Delta y\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n_{3}-2} \Delta y(n)+(1-\eta) \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(n)
$$

From (27), we get
$\eta \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+(1-\xi) \Delta y\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n_{3}-2} \Delta y(n)<\left[(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n_{3}-2} p(n)+\eta p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon$
and from (25) and (26), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (1-\eta) \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(n) \leq(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)[2|c| \\
& \left.\quad+\sum_{i=n_{3}-1-\beta\left(n_{3}-1\right)}^{n_{2}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon+\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[2|c|+\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n_{2}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon
\end{aligned}
$$

We then have

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right) & \leq|c| \varepsilon+\left[(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n_{3}-2} p(n)+\eta p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon \\
& +(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\left[2|c|+\sum_{i=n_{3}-1-\beta\left(n_{3}-1\right)}^{n_{2}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon \\
& +\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[2|c|+\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n_{2}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon .
\end{aligned}
$$

From (29) and (32), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right) & \leq|c| \varepsilon+\left[(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{2}}^{n_{3}-2} p(n)+\eta p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon \\
& +(1-2|c|)\left[2|c|-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right)\right] \varepsilon+(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\left[\sum_{\substack{i=n_{3}-1-\\
\beta\left(n_{3}-1\right)}}^{n_{3}-1} p(i)-\sum_{i=n_{2}}^{n_{3}-1} p(i)\right] \varepsilon \\
& +\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n} p(i)-\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n} p(i)-\sum_{i=n_{2}}^{n_{3}-1} p(i)\right] \varepsilon \\
& <|c| \varepsilon+2|c|(1-2|c|) \varepsilon+2|c|(1-\xi) p\left(n_{2}-1\right) \varepsilon+2|c| \sum_{i=n_{2}}^{n_{3}-1} p(i) \varepsilon \\
& -\varepsilon(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\varepsilon(1-\eta) \beta p\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[\beta-\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n} p(i)\right] \varepsilon \\
& =|c| \varepsilon+2|c|(1-2|c|) \varepsilon-2|c| \xi p\left(n_{2}-1\right) \varepsilon+2|c|\left[\sum_{i=n_{2}-1}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)-\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)\right] \varepsilon \\
& -\varepsilon(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)+(1-2|c|) \beta \varepsilon-\frac{1}{2}\left[\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)\right]^{2} \varepsilon-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p^{2}(i) \varepsilon .
\end{aligned}
$$

Because

$$
\begin{aligned}
-2|c| & \sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)-(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)-\frac{1}{2}\left[\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)\right]^{2}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p^{2}(i) \\
& =-2|c|\left(1-2|c|-(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right)-(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right) \\
& -\frac{1}{2}\left[1-2|c|-(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right]^{2}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p^{2}(i) \\
& =-2|c|(1-2|c|)-\frac{1}{2}(1-2|c|)^{2}-\frac{1}{2}\left[\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p^{2}(i)+(1-\eta)^{2} p^{2}\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p^{2}(i)+(1-\eta)^{2} p^{2}\left(n_{3}-1\right) & \geq \frac{1}{n^{*}-n_{3}}\left[\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)+(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right]^{2} \\
& \geq \frac{1}{l+1}\left[\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)+(1-\eta) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right]^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right) & <\varepsilon[|c|+2|c|(1-2|c|)+2|c| \beta+(1-2|c|) \beta-2|c|(1-2|c|) \\
& \left.-\frac{1}{2}(1-2|c|)^{2}-\frac{1}{2} \frac{(1-2|c|)^{2}}{(l+1)}\right]=(1-|c|) \varepsilon .
\end{aligned}
$$

This inequality contradicts (17). Therefore Case 2 is also impossible.
Based on the above two cases, we see that (12) holds. Hence the zero solution of equation (1) is uniformly stable.

Proof of Theorem 2.2 From Theorem 2.1, we see that the zero solution of equation (1) is uniformly stable, thus we only need to prove that the zero solution of equation (1) is uniformly attractive.

Select

$$
\delta=\frac{(1-|c|)}{(1+|c|)(2|c|+3)^{3 r}} H
$$

In the following, we prove that for any $n_{0} \in N$, if the solution $\{x(n)\}$ of the equation satisfies $\left|x\left(n_{0}+i\right)\right|<\delta, i=-r,-r+1, \ldots, 0$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} x(n)=0 \tag{33}
\end{equation*}
$$

The following proof is similar to that of Theorem 2.1, so we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(n) \mid<H, \quad n \in N\left(n_{0}\right) . \tag{34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
y(n)=x(n)-c x(n-k), \quad n \in N\left(n_{0}\right), \tag{35}
\end{equation*}
$$

then

$$
\begin{equation*}
|y(n)|<(1+|c|) H, \quad n \in N\left(n_{0}\right) . \tag{36}
\end{equation*}
$$

There are two situations that needed to be contemplated.
Case $1\{y(n)\}$ is eventually monotonous.
Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \inf x(n), \quad B=\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \sup x(n) . \tag{37}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will prove that $A=B=0$ and $A \leq 0$.
In fact, if $A>0$, then for any $0<\varepsilon<A$, there is $n_{1} \in N\left(n_{0}+l\right)$, such that

$$
x\left(n_{1}-l\right)>A-\varepsilon>0 .
$$

Hence, when $n \in N\left(n_{1}-l\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(n)>A-\varepsilon . \tag{38}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore from (35), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n_{1}\right)-y\left(n_{1}+1\right) & =f\left(n_{1}, x\left(n_{1}-l_{1}(n)\right), \ldots, x\left(n_{1}-l_{m}(n)\right)\right) \\
& \geq p\left(n_{1}\right) x\left(n_{1}-\beta\left(n_{1}\right)\right)>p\left(n_{1}\right)(A-\varepsilon) .
\end{aligned}
$$

In general, for $m=0,1, \ldots$, we have

$$
y\left(n_{1}+m\right)-y\left(n_{1}+m+1\right)>p\left(n_{1}+m\right)(A-\varepsilon) .
$$

Then we have

$$
y\left(n_{1}\right)-y\left(n_{1}+m+1\right)>\sum_{i=0}^{m} p\left(n_{1}+i\right)(A-\varepsilon)
$$

From (36) and $\{y(n)\}$ being eventually monotonous, we can see that the limit value of $\{y(n)\}$ exists. Therefore from (9), we know that the above inequality doesn't hold and hence $A \leq 0$.

In the following we will prove $A=0$. Suppose

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} y(n)=y^{*} .
$$

We will prove that

$$
\begin{equation*}
y^{*}=0 . \tag{39}
\end{equation*}
$$

In fact, if (39) doesn't hold, we assume that $y^{*}>0$, from the definition of $A$. We can see that there is a positive integer sequence $\left\{n_{j}\right\}$, such that

$$
\lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} n_{j}=+\infty, \quad \lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} x\left(n_{j}\right)=A
$$

then when $j \rightarrow+\infty$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
c x\left(n_{j}-k\right)=x\left(n_{j}\right)-y\left(n_{j}\right) \rightarrow A-y^{*}, \tag{40}
\end{equation*}
$$

and since

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} f\left(n_{1}, x\left(n_{1}-l_{1}(n), \ldots, x\left(n_{1}-l_{m}(n)\right)\right)=\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty}(-\Delta y(n))=0\right. \tag{41}
\end{equation*}
$$

from(40), we see that there must exist $c \neq 0$.
If $c=0$, we must have

$$
\lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} c x\left(n_{j}-k\right)=0=A-y^{*}
$$

that is $A=y^{*}$, which obviously doesn't hold.
Hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} c x\left(n_{j}-k\right)=\frac{A-y^{*}}{c} . \tag{42}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the definitions of $A$ and $B$, we see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \inf x(n) \leq \lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} x\left(n_{j}-k\right)=\frac{A-y^{*}}{c} \leq \lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \sup x(n)=B \tag{43}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $c>0$, from $A<\left(A-y^{*}\right) / c$ we have $(1-c) A>y^{*}$, then we see that the inequality doesn't hold.

If $c<0$, from $x(n)=y(n)+c x(n-k), n \in N\left(n_{0}\right)$, we get

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \sup x(n)=\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \sup (y(n)+c x(n-k)),
$$

then $B=y^{*}+c B$.
From (43), we can see that $c A \geq c B$, then we have $B \leq y^{*}+c A$. Since $B \geq\left(A-y^{*}\right) / c$, we have $(1+c) y^{*} \leq\left(1-c^{2}\right) A$ which can not hold. Therefore (39) must hold. Hence, $A=y^{*}+c A=c A$, that is $(1-c) A=0$ or $A=0$.

In the following we will prove $B=0$.
In fact, according to the definition of $B$, we can see that there is a positive integer sequence $\left\{l_{j}\right\}$, such that

$$
\lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} l_{j}=+\infty \quad \text { and } \quad \lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} x\left(l_{j}\right)=B
$$

If $c=0$, obviously, we get $B=0$. If $c<0$, while $j \rightarrow+\infty$, we get

$$
y\left(l_{j}\right)-y\left(l_{j}-k\right)=x\left(l_{j}\right)-(1+c) x\left(l_{j}-k\right)+c x\left(l_{j}-2 k\right) \rightarrow 0,
$$

then for $j \rightarrow+\infty$, we have

$$
(1+c) x\left(l_{j}-k\right)-c x\left(l_{j}-k\right) \rightarrow B .
$$

Since the line $(1+c) x-c y=B, c>0$ and the region $0 \leq x, y \leq B$ only have one crossover point ( $B, B$ ), so

$$
\lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} x\left(l_{j}-k\right)=\lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} x\left(l_{j}-2 k\right)=B .
$$

Therefore

$$
\lim _{j \rightarrow+\infty} y\left(l_{j}-k\right)=(1-c) B=0
$$

that is $B=0$.
If $c>0$, we can similarly prove that $B=0$.
In conclusion, if $\{y(n)\}$ is eventually monotonous, then

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \inf x(n)=\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \sup x(n)=0,
$$

that is

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} x(n)=0 .
$$

Case $2\{y(n)\}$ is not eventually monotonous. Let

$$
M=\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \sup |x(n)|, \quad N=\lim _{n \rightarrow+\infty} \sup |y(n)| .
$$

If (33) doesn't hold, we must have $M>0$. Then for any $\varepsilon>0$, and $\varepsilon$ satisfies $\varepsilon<$ $\frac{1-2|c|}{1+|c|} M, \varepsilon<I$, there must exist a $n_{2} \in N\left(n_{0}+r\right)$, such that when $n \in N\left(n_{2}-r\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
|x(n)|<M+\varepsilon \tag{44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, when $n \in N\left(n_{2}\right)$, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
y(n) \geq|x(n)|-|c|\left(M+\varepsilon_{1}\right) \tag{45}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we have $I \geq M-|c|\left(M+\varepsilon_{1}\right)$. Because of the arbitrariness of $\varepsilon$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
I \geq(1-|c|) M \tag{46}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\{y(n)\}$ is not eventually monotonous, for the above $\varepsilon$, there must exist a $n^{*} \in$ $N\left(n_{2}+2 r+1\right)$, which satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
y\left(n^{*}\right)>I-\varepsilon, \tag{47}
\end{equation*}
$$

such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
y\left(n^{*}\right)>y\left(n^{*}+1\right), \quad y\left(n^{*}\right) \geq y\left(n^{*}-1\right) \tag{48}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, we have

$$
x\left(n^{*}\right)=y\left(n^{*}\right)-c x\left(n^{*}-k\right) \geq I-\varepsilon-|c|(M+\varepsilon) \geq(1-|c|) M-\varepsilon-|c|(M+\varepsilon)>0
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(n^{*}-1-\beta\left(n^{*}-1\right)\right) \leq 0 . \tag{49}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus there must be a $n_{3} \in N\left(n^{*}-\beta\left(n^{*}-1\right), n^{*}\right)$ and a $\xi \in[0,1)$, such that

$$
\begin{gather*}
x\left(n_{3}-1\right) \leq 0, \quad x(n)>0, \quad \text { where } \quad n \in N\left(n_{3}, n^{*}\right),  \tag{50}\\
x\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\xi\left(x\left(n_{3}\right)-x\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right)=0 . \tag{51}
\end{gather*}
$$

Then from (35) and (44), we have

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\left[y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\left(y\left(n_{3}\right)-y\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right)\right]=c\left[(1-\xi) x\left(n_{3}-1-k\right)+\xi x\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right]<|c|(M+\varepsilon), \\
& y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\xi\left(y\left(n_{3}\right)-y\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right)=-c\left[(1-\xi) x\left(n_{3}-1-k\right)+\xi x\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right]<|c|(M+\varepsilon) . \tag{52}
\end{align*}
$$

That is

$$
\begin{equation*}
y\left(n_{3}-1\right)<|c|(M+\varepsilon)-\xi \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right) . \tag{53}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we will prove that, when $n \in N\left(n_{2}, n^{*}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
-x(n) \leq\left[2|c|+\sum_{i=n}^{n_{3}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right](M+\varepsilon) \tag{54}
\end{equation*}
$$

In fact, when $n \in N\left(n_{3}, n^{*}\right)$, from (50) we can see that the above equality holds. In the following, we will prove that, when $n \in N\left(n_{2}, n_{3}-1\right)$, (54) holds. From (1) and (6), we see that, when $n \in N\left(n_{2}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta y(n)<-p(n) x(n-\beta(n)) \tag{55}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, from (44) we see that, when $n \in N\left(n_{2}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta y(n)<p(n)(M+\varepsilon) \tag{56}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, for any $n \in N\left(n_{2}, n_{3}-1\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
-\left[y(n)-y\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right. & \left.-\xi\left(y\left(n_{3}\right)-y\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right)\right]=\sum_{i=n}^{n_{3}-2} \Delta y(i)+\xi \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right) \\
& <-\sum_{i=n}^{n_{3}-2} p(i) x(i-\beta(i))-\xi p\left(n_{3}-1\right) x\left(n_{3}-1-\beta\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right)  \tag{57}\\
& \leq\left[\sum_{i=n}^{n_{3}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right](M+\varepsilon)
\end{align*}
$$

Then from (35), (44), (52) and (57), we know that if $n \in N\left(n_{2}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
-x(n) & =-(y(n)+c x(n-k))=-\left[y(n)-y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\xi\left(y\left(n_{3}\right)-y\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right)\right] \\
& -y\left(n_{3}-1\right)-\xi\left(y\left(n_{3}\right)-y\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right)-c x(n-k) \\
& \leq\left[\sum_{i=n}^{n_{3}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{3}-1\right)+2|c|\right](M+\varepsilon)
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore (54) holds.
Suppose

$$
\beta=\frac{3}{2}+\frac{(1-2|c|)^{2}}{2(l+1)}-2|c|(2-|c|)
$$

Then from (11), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n} p(i) \leq \beta, \quad n \in N \tag{58}
\end{equation*}
$$

Denote

$$
\begin{equation*}
d=\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)+(1-\xi) p\left(n_{3}-1\right) \tag{59}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the following, we have two situations to contemplate.
Case 2-a $d \leq 1-2|c|$.
From (53), we obtain

$$
y\left(n^{*}\right)=y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{i=n_{3}-1}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(i) \leq|c|(M+\varepsilon)-\xi \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{i=n_{3}-1}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(i)
$$

From (54) and (55), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right) & \leq|c|(M+\varepsilon)+(1-\xi) \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(i) \\
& <|c|(M+\varepsilon)+(1-\xi) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\left[\sum_{\substack{i=n_{3}-1-\\
\beta\left(n_{3}-1\right)}}^{n_{3}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{3}-1\right)+2|c|\right](M+\varepsilon) \\
& +\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)\left[\sum_{j=i-\beta(i)}^{n_{3}-2} p(j)+\xi p\left(n_{3}-1\right)+2|c|\right](M+\varepsilon) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The following proof is similar to Case 1 of Theorem 2.1, we have

$$
y\left(n^{*}\right)<(1-|c|)(M+\varepsilon) .
$$

Case 2-b $\quad d>1-2|c|$.
Now there exists a positive integer $n_{4} \in N\left(n_{3}, n^{*}\right)$, such that

$$
2|c|+\sum_{i=n_{4}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)<1 \quad \text { and } \quad 2|c|+\sum_{i=n_{4}-1}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)>1
$$

Therefore there is a $\eta \in(0,1)$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
2|c|+\sum_{i=n_{4}}^{n^{*}-1} p(i)+(1-\eta) p\left(n_{4}-1\right)=1 . \tag{60}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since

$$
y\left(n^{*}\right)=y\left(n_{3}+1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{4}-1}^{n 4-2} \Delta y(n)+\eta \Delta y\left(n_{4}-1\right)+(1-\eta) \Delta y\left(n_{4}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{4}}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(n),
$$

then from (53), (54) and (56), we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
y\left(n^{*}\right)< & |c|(M+\varepsilon)(1-\xi) \Delta y\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{3}-2}^{n_{4}-2} \Delta y(n)+\eta \Delta y\left(n_{4}-1\right) \\
& +(1+\eta) \Delta y\left(n_{4}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{4}}^{n^{*}-1} \Delta y(n) \\
\leq & |c|(M+\varepsilon)+\left[(1-\xi) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{3}-2}^{n_{4}-2} p(n)+\eta p\left(n_{4}-1\right)\right](M+\varepsilon) \\
& +(1-\eta) p\left(n_{4}-1\right)\left[2|c|+\sum_{i=n_{4}-1-\beta\left(n_{4}-1\right)}^{n_{3}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right](M+\varepsilon)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& +\sum_{n=n_{4}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[2|c|+\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n_{3}-2} p(i)+\xi p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right](M+\varepsilon) \\
= & |c|(M+\varepsilon)+\left[(1-\xi) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)+\sum_{n=n_{3}-2}^{n_{4}-2} p(n)+\eta p\left(n_{4}-1\right)\right](M+\varepsilon) \\
& +(1-2|c|)\left[2|c|-(1-\xi) p\left(n_{3}-1\right)\right](M+\varepsilon) \\
& +(1-\eta) p\left(n_{4}-1\right)\left[\sum_{i=n_{4}-1-\beta\left(n_{4}-1\right)}^{n_{4}-1} p(i)-\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n_{4}-1} p(i)\right](M+\varepsilon) \\
& +\sum_{n=n_{4}}^{n^{*}-1} p(n)\left[\sum_{i=n-\beta(n)}^{n} p(i)-\sum_{i=n_{4}}^{n} p(i)-\sum_{i=n_{3}}^{n_{4}-1} p(i)\right](M+\varepsilon) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The following proof is similar to Theorem 2.1. We have

$$
y\left(n^{*}\right)<(1-|c|)(M+\varepsilon) .
$$

Based on the two cases a and b, we have

$$
y\left(n^{*}\right)<(1-|c|)(M+\varepsilon) .
$$

Hence, from (47), we have

$$
I-\varepsilon<y\left(n^{*}\right)<(1-|c|)(M+\varepsilon) .
$$

From the arbitrariness of $\varepsilon$, we have

$$
I<(1-|c|) M,
$$

which contradicts (46). Therefore Case 2 is impossible. Thus when $\{y(n)\}$ is not eventually monotonous, (33) also holds.

Based on these two cases, we can see that (33) must hold. Thus the zero solution of the equation is uniformly attractive. Therefore the zero solution of equation (1) is said to be uniformly asymptotically stable.

## 3 Conclusions

According to the above analysis, in the cases of several variable delay, we have obtained the sufficient conditions of uniform stability and uniform asymptotical stability. These results extent and improve the relative theorem in the literature [7]. And the methods used in this paper can have important significances in the studies of the stabilities of difference equation with several variable delays.

## Acknowledgment

The authors gratefully acknowledge the helpful comments and suggestions of the reviewers.

## References

[1] Levin, S. and May, R. A note on difference-delay equations. Theoretical Population Biology 9 (1976) 178-187.
[2] Ladas, G., Qian, C., Vlahos, P.N. and Yan, J. Stability of solutions of linear nonautonomous difference equations. Appl. Anal. 41(1) (1991) 183-191.
[3] Erbe, L.H., Xia, H. and Yu, J.S. Global stability of all linear nonautonomous delay difference equations. J. Difference Eqns and Appl. 1(1) (1995) 151-161.
[4] Zhou, Z. and Zhan, Q.Q. Uniform stability of nonlinear difference systems. J. Math. Anal. and Appl. 225 (1998) 486-500.
[5] Kuruklis, S.A. The asymptotic stability of $x_{n+1}-a x_{n}+b x_{n-k}$. J. Math. Anal. and Appl. 188 (1994) 719-731.
[6] Zhou, Z. and Yu, J.S. Linearly uniform stability of nonautonomous delay difference equations. Chinese Annals of Mathematics 19(3) (1998) 301-308.
[7] Zhou, Z. and Yu, J.S. Uniform stability of nonautonomous neutral delay difference equations. Acta Mathematics Sinica 42 (1999) 1093-1102.
[8] Yu, J.S. and Cheng, S.S. A stability criterion for a neutral difference equations with delay. Applied Mathematics Letters 7(6) (1994) 75-80.
[9] Liu, Y.J. and Tan, X.Q. Uniform stability of nonautonomous delay difference equations. J. of Yunmeng 20(4) (1999) 1-7.
[10] Lakshmikantham V. and Vatsala, A.S. Set differential equations and monotone flows. Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory 3(2) (2003) 151-162.
[11] Zemtsova, N.I. Stability of the stationary solutions of the differential equations of restricted Newtonian problem with incomplete symmetry. Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory 3(1) (2003) 105-112.
[12] Mahdavi, M. Asymptotic behavior in some classes of functional differential equations. Nonlinear Dynamics and Systems Theory 4(1) (2004) 51-58.

# NONLINEAR DYNAMICS AND SYSTEMS THEORY 

An International Journal of Research and Surveys

## INSTRUCTIONS FOR CONTRIBUTORS

(1) General. The Journal will publish original carefully refereed papers, brief notes and reviews on a wide range of nonlinear dynamics and systems theory problems. Contributions will be considered for publication in ND\&ST if they have not been published previously. Before preparing your submission, it is essential that you consult our style guide; please visit our website: http://www.sciencearea.com.ua
(2) Manuscript and Correspondence. Contributions are welcome from all countries and should be written in English. Two copies of the manuscript, double spaced one column format, and the electronic version by AMSTEX, TEX or LATEX program (on diskette) should be sent directly to

> Professor A.A. Martynyuk Institute of Mechanics, Nesterov str.3, 03057, MSP 680 Kiev-57, Ukraine (e-mail: anmart@stability.kiev.ua). or to one of the Editors or to a member of the Editorial Board.

The title of the article must include: author(s) name, name of institution, department, address, FAX, and e-mail; an Abstract of 50-100 words should not include any formulas and citations; key words, and AMS subject classifications number(s). The size for regular paper should be 10-14 pages, survey (up to 24 pages), short papers, letter to the editor and book reviews (2-3 pages).
(3) Tables, Graphs and Illustrations. All figures must be suitable for reproduction without being retouched or redrawn and must include a title. Line drawings should include all relevant details and should be drawn in black ink on plain white drawing paper. In addition to a hard copy of the artwork, it is necessary to attach a PC diskette with files of the artwork (preferably in PCX format).
(4) References. Each entry must be cited in the text by author(s) and number or by number alone. All references should be listed in their alphabetic order. Use please the following style:

Journal: [1] Poincaré, H. Title of the article. Title of the Journal Vol.1(No.1) (year) pages. [Language].
Book: [2] Liapunov, A.M. Title of the book. Name of the Publishers, Town, year.
Proceeding: [3] Bellman, R. Title of the article. In: Title of the book. (Eds.).
Name of the Publishers, Town, year, pages. [Language].
(5) Proofs and Reprints. Proofs sent to authors should be returned to the Editor with corrections within three days after receipt. Acceptance of the paper entitles the author to 10 free reprints.
(6) Editorial Policy. Every paper is reviewed by the regional editor, and/or a referee, and it may be returned for revision or rejected if considered unsuitable for publication.
(7) Copyright Assignment. When a paper is accepted for publication, author(s) will be requested to sign a form assigning copyright to Informath Publishing Group. Failure to do it promptly may delay the publication.

## NONLINEAR DYNAMICS AND SYSTEMS THEORY

An International Journal of Research and Surveys
Volume 5 Number 3 ..... 2005
CONTENTS
On the Bounded Oscillation of Certain Fourth Order Functional Differential Equations ..... 215
R.P. Agarwal, S.R. Grace and Patricia J.Y. Wong
A Fredholm Operator and Solution Sets to Evolution Systems ..... 229
V. Durikovic and M. Durikovicova
Influence of Propellant Burn Pattern on the Attitude Dynamics of a Spinning Rocket ..... 251
F.O. Eke and J. Sookgaew
A "Patched Conics" Description of the Swing-By of a Group of Particles ..... 265
A.F.B.A. Prado
Fault Detection Filter for Linear Time-Delay Systems ..... 273
Maiying Zhong, Hao Ye, Steven X. Ding, Guizeng Wang and Zhou Donghua
Adaptive Output Control of a Class of Time-Varying Uncertain Nonlinear Systems ..... 285
Jing Zhou, Changyun Wen and Ying Zhang
Stability of Nonautonomous Neutral Variable Delay Difference Equation ..... 299Hai-Long Xing, Xiao-Zhu Zhong, Yan Shi,Jing-Cui Liang and Dong-Hua Wang


[^0]:    * Corresponding author: agarwal@fit.edu

[^1]:    *Corresponding author: vdurikovic@fmph.uniba.sk

[^2]:    * Corresponding author: foeke@ucdavis.edu

[^3]:    *Corresponding author: prado@dem.inpe.br

[^4]:    * Corresponding author: s.x.ding@uni-duisburg.de

[^5]:    *Corresponding author: ecywen@ntu.edu.sg

[^6]:    ${ }^{*}$ Corresponding author: shi@ktmail.ktokai-u.ac.jp

